

**CAN/CSA-S6-06**  
*A National Standard of Canada*

Single user license only. Storage, distribution or use on network prohibited.

# Canadian Highway Bridge Design Code





# S6S1-10

## **Supplement No. 1 to CAN/CSA-S6-06, Canadian Highway Bridge Design Code**

### May 2010

**Note:** General Instructions for CSA Standards are now called Updates. Please contact CSA Information Products Sales or visit [www.ShopCSA.ca](http://www.ShopCSA.ca) for information about the **CSA Standards Update Service**.

**Title:** *Canadian Highway Bridge Design Code* — originally published November 2006

The following revisions have been formally approved and are marked by the symbol delta ( $\Delta$ ) in the margin on the attached replacement pages:

<b>Revised</b>	Table of Contents, Clauses 1.2, 3.10.2.2, 3.10.5.2, A3.3.3.3.1, A3.3.3.3.3, 4.4.7.1, 4.5.3.2, 4.7.4.3, Table of Contents (Section 5), 5.3.2, 5.7.1.6.1.1, 5.7.1.7.1, 5.12.3, 8.4.4.6, 8.8.4.6, 8.9.3.18, 8.10.5.1, 8.14.6, 8.16.7.6.4.2, 8.16.7.6.5, Table of Contents (Section 9), 9.6.1, 9.6.2, 9.8.1, 9.8.3.3, Table of Contents (Section 10), 10.3.2, 10.4.2, 10.4.5–10.4.7, 10.4.9, 10.4.11.2, 10.5.3.2, 10.5.7, 10.5.9.2.4, 10.6.4.2, 10.6.6, 10.7, 10.7.1, 10.7.4.3, 10.8.1.3.1, 10.8.1.3.2, 10.8.2, 10.9.3.1, 10.9.5.2, 10.9.5.4, 10.10.2.3, 10.10.8.1, 10.10.8.2, 10.11.5.3.2, 10.11.6.3.1.2, 10.11.8.2, 10.11.8.3, 10.12.5.3.2, 10.12.5.4, 10.13.6.1.2, 10.13.6.1.3, 10.13.7.3, 10.17.2.2, 10.17.2.3.2, 10.17.2.7, 10.18.1.5, 10.18.2.3.1–10.18.2.3.3, 10.18.3.2.2, 10.19, 10.20.2.4, 10.22, 10.22.1–10.22.4, 10.23.3.5, 10.23.4.2–10.23.4.5, 10.24.3.2, 10.24.4.3.2, 10.24.4.8, 10.24.5.1, 10.24.5.4–10.24.5.6, 10.24.7.2, 10.24.8.2, 10.24.9, Table of Contents (Section 14), 14.3, 14.5.2.1, 14.5.2.3, 14.5.4, 14.5.4.1, 14.6.2, 14.6.4, 14.7.1, 14.7.4.3, 14.8.2.1, 14.9.3, 14.14.1.3.1, 14.14.1.3.2, 14.17.1, 15.6.2.4, 16.3.2, 16.5.3, 16.6.2, 16.7.1–16.7.3, 16.8.4.1, 16.8.6.3, 16.8.7, 16.8.8.1, 16.8.8.2, 16.10, 16.11.2.5.6, and 16.11.3.1–16.11.3.3, Tables 3.1, A3.1.1, 4.6, 5.4, 5.10, A5.2.2, 8.5, 9.15, 10.3, 10.9, 10.18, 13.3–13.5, 14.14, 16.2, and 16.3, and Figures 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 5.6, 10.1, 10.3, and 10.5
<b>New</b>	Technical Committee (membership at the time of the formal approval of CSA S6S1-10), Subcommittees on Sections 3–6, 8, 10, 14, and 16 (membership at the time of the formal approval of CSA S6S1-10), Code Calibration Task Force (membership at the time of the formal approval of CSA S6S1-10), French Translation Task Force (membership at the time of the formal approval of CSA S6S1-10), Regulatory Authority Committee (membership at the time of the formal approval of CSA S6S1-10), Clauses 10.4.13, 10.5.3.6, 10.8.1.3.2.1–10.8.1.3.2.5, 10.11.8.3.1–10.11.8.3.3, 10.22.5–10.22.8, and 14.4.4, Tables 10.14A and 10.14B, and Figure 5.1A
<b>Deleted</b>	Clauses 10.24.3.3, 10.24.3.4, 14.5.2.5, 14.5.3, and 14.9.5.6 and Table 10.14

CAN/CSA-S6-06 originally consisted of **788 pages** (lv preliminary and 733 text), each dated **November 2006**. It now consists of the following pages:

<b>November 2006</b>	1–6, 11–48, 51–60, 63, 64, 67–72, 75–104, 109–124, 127–130, 135, 136, 139–158, 161–164, 167–184, 189–192, 199–204, 207–210, 213–218, 221–316, 319–326, 329–334, 337, 338, 341, 342, 345–352, 355–364, 367–380, 383–390, 397–404, 407–424, 451, 452, 457–460, 463, 464, 475, 476, 481–486, 491–498, 507, 508, 517, 518, 531–590, 595–640, 643, 644, 653–656, 661–664, 667–670, 673–676, 679–690, 693–696, 701, 702, 707–710, 719, 720, and 725–733
<b>May 2010</b>	iii–lxx, 7–10, 49, 50, 61, 62, 65, 66, 73, 74, 105–108, 125, 126, 131–134, 137, 138, 159, 160, 165–166A, 185–188, 193–198, 205, 206, 211–212A, 219, 220, 317, 318, 327, 328, 335, 336, 339, 340, 343, 344, 353, 354, 365, 366, 381, 382, 391–396, 405, 406, 425–450, 453–456, 461, 462, 465–474, 477–480, 487–490, 499–506A, 509–516, 519–530, 591–594, 641, 642, 645–652, 657–660, 665, 666, 671, 672, 677, 678, 691, 692, 697–700, 703–706, 711–718, and 721–724

- Update your copy by inserting these revised pages.
- Keep the pages you remove for reference.

# Δ Contents

Technical Committee on the Canadian Highway Bridge Design Code (CAN/CSA-S6-06)	xxx
Technical Committee on the Canadian Highway Bridge Design Code (CSA S6S1-10)	xxxii
Subcommittee on Section 1 — General	xxxiv
Subcommittee on Section 2 — Durability	xxxv
Subcommittee on Section 3 — Loads (CAN/CSA-S6-06)	xxxvi
Subcommittee on Section 3 — Loads (CSA S6S1-10)	xxxvii
Subcommittee on Section 4 — Seismic design (CAN/CSA-S6-06)	xxxviii
Subcommittee on Section 4 — Seismic design (CSA S6S1-10)	xxxix
Subcommittee on Section 5 — Methods of analysis (CAN/CSA-S6-06)	xl
Subcommittee on Section 5 — Methods of analysis (CSA S6S1-10)	xli
Subcommittee on Section 6 — Foundations (CAN/CSA-S6-06)	xlii
Subcommittee on Section 6 — Foundations (CSA S6S1-10)	xliii
Subcommittee on Section 7 — Buried structures	xliv
Subcommittee on Section 8 — Concrete structures (CAN/CSA-S6-06)	xlv
Subcommittee on Section 8 — Concrete structures (CSA S6S1-10)	xlvi
Subcommittee on Section 9 — Wood structures	xlvii
Subcommittee on Section 10 — Steel structures (CAN/CSA-S6-06)	xlviii
Subcommittee on Section 10 — Steel structures (CSA S6S1-10)	xlix
Subcommittee on Section 11 — Joints and bearings	l
Subcommittee on Section 12 — Barriers and highway accessory supports	li
Subcommittee on Section 13 — Movable bridges	lii
Subcommittee on Section 14 — Evaluation (CAN/CSA-S6-06)	liii
Subcommittee on Section 14 — Evaluation (CSA S6S1-10)	liv
Subcommittee on Section 15 — Rehabilitation and repair	lv
Subcommittee on Section 16 — Fibre-reinforced structures (CAN/CSA-S6-06)	lvii
Subcommittee on Section 16 — Fibre-reinforced structures (CSA S6S1-10)	lviii

Code Calibration Task Force (CAN/CSA-S6-06)	<i>lix</i>
Code Calibration Task Force (CSA S6S1-10)	<i>lx</i>
Editorial Task Force	<i>lxi</i>
French Translation Task Force (CAN/CSA-S6-06)	<i>lxii</i>
French Translation Task Force (CSA S6S1-10)	<i>lxiii</i>
Regulatory Authority Committee (CAN/CSA-S6-06)	<i>lxiv</i>
Regulatory Authority Committee (CSA S6S1-10)	<i>lxvi</i>
Preface	<i>lxvii</i>
Foreword	<i>lxx</i>

## **Section 1 — General 1**

1.1	Scope	2
1.1.1	Scope of Code	2
1.1.2	Scope of this Section	2
1.1.3	Terminology	2
1.2	Reference publications	2
1.3	Definitions	10
1.3.1	General	10
1.3.2	General administrative definitions	10
1.3.3	General technical definitions	10
1.3.4	Hydraulic definitions	15
1.4	General requirements	16
1.4.1	Approval	16
1.4.2	Design	17
1.4.3	Evaluation and rehabilitation of existing bridges	18
1.4.4	Construction	18
1.5	Geometry	20
1.5.1	Planning	20
1.5.2	Structure geometry	20
1.6	Barriers	20
1.6.1	Superstructure barriers	20
1.6.2	Roadside substructure barriers	20
1.6.3	Structure protection in waterways	21
1.6.4	Structure protection at railways	21
1.7	Auxiliary components	21
1.7.1	Expansion joints and bearings	21
1.7.2	Approach slabs	21
1.7.3	Utilities on bridges	21
1.8	Durability and maintenance	22
1.8.1	Durability and protection	22
1.8.2	Bridge deck drainage	22
1.8.3	Maintenance	24
1.9	Hydraulic design	25
1.9.1	Design criteria	25
1.9.2	Investigations	26
1.9.3	Location and alignment	26
1.9.4	Estimation of scour	26

- 1.9.5 Protection against scour 27
- 1.9.6 Backwater 29
- 1.9.7 Soffit elevation 29
- 1.9.8 Approach grade elevation 30
- 1.9.9 Channel erosion control 30
- 1.9.10 Stream stabilization works and realignment 31
- 1.9.11 Culverts 31

## **Section 2 — Durability 33**

- 2.1 Scope 34
- 2.2 Definitions 34
- 2.3 Design for durability 34
  - 2.3.1 Design concept 34
  - 2.3.2 Durability requirements 34
  - 2.3.3 Structural materials 36
- 2.4 Aluminum 36
  - 2.4.1 Deterioration mechanisms 36
  - 2.4.2 Detailing for durability 36
- 2.5 Polychloroprene and polyisoprene 37
- 2.6 Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) 37
- 2.7 Waterproofing membranes 37
- 2.8 Backfill material 37
- 2.9 Soil and rock anchors 37
- 2.10 Other materials 37

## **Section 3 — Loads 39**

- 3.1 Scope 41
- 3.2 Definitions 41
- 3.3 Abbreviations and symbols 43
  - 3.3.1 Abbreviations 43
  - 3.3.2 Symbols 43
- 3.4 Limit states criteria 47
  - 3.4.1 General 47
  - 3.4.2 Ultimate limit states 47
  - 3.4.3 Fatigue limit state 47
  - 3.4.4 Serviceability limit states 47
- 3.5 Load factors and load combinations 48
  - 3.5.1 General 48
  - 3.5.2 Permanent loads 50
  - 3.5.3 Transitory loads 51
  - 3.5.4 Exceptional loads 51
- 3.6 Dead loads 51
- 3.7 Earth loads and secondary prestress loads 52
  - 3.7.1 Earth loads 52
  - 3.7.2 Secondary prestress effects 52
- 3.8 Live loads 52
  - 3.8.1 General 52
  - 3.8.2 Design lanes 52
  - 3.8.3 CL-W loading 52
  - 3.8.4 Application 54
  - 3.8.5 Centrifugal force 56
  - 3.8.6 Braking force 56
  - 3.8.7 Curb load 56
  - 3.8.8 Barrier loads 56
  - 3.8.9 Pedestrian load 57

3.8.10	Maintenance access loads	57
3.8.11	Maintenance vehicle load	57
3.8.12	Multiple-use structures	57
3.9	Superimposed deformations	58
3.9.1	General	58
3.9.2	Movements and load effects	58
3.9.3	Superstructure types	58
3.9.4	Temperature effects	59
3.10	Wind loads	61
3.10.1	General	61
3.10.2	Design of the superstructure	62
3.10.3	Design of the substructure	63
3.10.4	Aeroelastic instability	64
3.10.5	Wind tunnel tests	65
3.11	Water loads	65
3.11.1	General	65
3.11.2	Static pressure	65
3.11.3	Buoyancy	65
3.11.4	Stream pressure	65
3.11.5	Wave action	66
3.11.6	Scour action	66
3.11.7	Debris torrents	66
3.12	Ice loads	67
3.12.1	General	67
3.12.2	Dynamic ice forces	67
3.12.3	Static ice forces	69
3.12.4	Ice jams	69
3.12.5	Ice adhesion forces	69
3.12.6	Ice accretion	69
3.13	Earthquake effects	69
3.14	Vessel collisions	70
3.14.1	General	70
3.14.2	Bridge classification	70
3.14.3	Assessment	70
3.14.4	Annual frequency of collapse	70
3.14.5	Design vessel	70
3.14.6	Application of collision forces	70
3.14.7	Protection of piers	71
3.15	Vehicle collision load	71
3.16	Construction loads and loads on temporary structures	71
3.16.1	General	71
3.16.2	Dead loads	71
3.16.3	Live loads	71
3.16.4	Segmental construction	71
3.16.5	Falsework	72

#### *Annexes*

A3.1 (normative)	— Climatic and environmental data	73
A3.2 (normative)	— Wind loads on highway accessory supports and slender structural elements	94
A3.3 (normative)	— Vessel collision	104
A3.4 (normative)	— CL-625-ONT live loading	113

#### **Section 4 — Seismic design** 115

4.1	Scope	117
4.2	Definitions	117



4.3	Abbreviation and symbols	119
4.3.1	Abbreviation	119
4.3.2	Symbols	119
4.4	Earthquake effects	122
4.4.1	General	122
4.4.2	Importance categories	122
4.4.3	Zonal acceleration ratio	123
4.4.4	Seismic performance zones	123
4.4.5	Analysis for earthquake loads	123
4.4.6	Site effects	125
4.4.7	Elastic seismic response coefficient	126
4.4.8	Response modification factors	127
4.4.9	Load factors and load combinations	128
4.4.10	Design forces and support lengths	128
4.5	Analysis	132
4.5.1	General	132
4.5.2	Single-span bridges	132
4.5.3	Multi-span bridges	133
4.6	Foundations	134
4.6.1	General	134
4.6.2	Liquefaction of foundation soils	134
4.6.3	Stability of slopes	135
4.6.4	Seismic forces on abutments and retaining walls	135
4.6.5	Soil-structure interaction	135
4.6.6	Fill settlement and approach slabs	135
4.7	Concrete structures	135
4.7.1	General	135
4.7.2	Seismic Performance Zone 1	135
4.7.3	Seismic Performance Zone 2	136
4.7.4	Seismic Performance Zones 3 and 4	136
4.7.5	Piles	138
4.8	Steel structures	140
4.8.1	General	140
4.8.2	Materials	140
4.8.3	Sway stability effects	140
4.8.4	Steel substructures	140
4.8.5	Other systems	144
4.9	Joints and bearings	144
4.9.1	General	144
4.9.2	Seismic design forces	144
4.10	Seismic base isolation	144
4.10.1	General	144
4.10.2	Zonal acceleration ratio	145
4.10.3	Seismic performance zones	145
4.10.4	Site effects and site coefficient	145
4.10.5	Response modification factors and design requirements for substructure	145
4.10.6	Analysis procedures	145
4.10.7	Clearance and design displacements for seismic and other loads	148
4.10.8	Design forces for Seismic Performance Zone 1	148
4.10.9	Design forces for Seismic Performance Zones 2, 3, and 4	148
4.10.10	Other requirements	148
4.10.11	Required tests of isolation system	149
4.10.12	Elastomeric bearings — Design	151
4.10.13	Elastomeric bearings — Construction	152

- 4.10.14 Sliding bearings — Design 153
- 4.10.15 Sliding bearings — Construction 153
- 4.11 Seismic evaluation of existing bridges 153
  - 4.11.1 General 153
  - 4.11.2 Bridge classification 153
  - 4.11.3 Damage levels 153
  - 4.11.4 Performance criteria 153
  - 4.11.5 Evaluation methods 153
  - 4.11.6 Load factors and load combinations for seismic evaluation 154
  - 4.11.7 Minimum support length 154
  - 4.11.8 Member capacities 154
  - 4.11.9 Required response modification factor 155
  - 4.11.10 Response modification factor of existing substructure elements 155
  - 4.11.11 Evaluation acceptance criteria 155
  - 4.11.12 Other evaluation procedures 156
  - 4.11.13 Bridge access 156
  - 4.11.14 Liquefaction of foundation soils 156
  - 4.11.15 Soil-structure interaction 156
- 4.12 Seismic rehabilitation 156
  - 4.12.1 Performance criteria 156
  - 4.12.2 Response modification factor for rehabilitation 156
  - 4.12.3 Seismic rehabilitation 156
  - 4.12.4 Seismic rehabilitation techniques 157
- Section 5 — Methods of analysis 159**
  - 5.1 Scope 161
  - 5.2 Definitions 161
  - 5.3 Abbreviations and symbols 164
    - 5.3.1 Abbreviations 164
    - 5.3.2 Symbols 164
  - 5.4 General requirements 167
    - 5.4.1 Application 167
    - 5.4.2 Analysis for limit states 167
    - 5.4.3 Modelling 167
    - 5.4.4 Structural responses 167
    - 5.4.5 Factors affecting structural responses 170
    - 5.4.6 Deformations 170
    - 5.4.7 Diaphragms and bracing systems 170
    - 5.4.8 Analysis of deck slabs 171
    - 5.4.9 Analysis for redistribution of force effects 171
    - 5.4.10 Analysis for accumulation of force effects due to construction sequence 171
    - 5.4.11 Analysis for effects of prestress 171
    - 5.4.12 Analysis for thermal effects 171
    - 5.4.13 Secondary stability effects 171
  - 5.5 Requirements for specific bridge types 171
    - 5.5.1 General 171
    - 5.5.2 Voided slab — Limitation on size of voids 171
    - 5.5.3 Deck-on-girder 172
    - 5.5.4 Truss and arch 172
    - 5.5.5 Rigid frame and integral abutment types 172
    - 5.5.6 Transverse wood deck 172
    - 5.5.7 Box girder 172
    - 5.5.8 Single-spine bridges 173
  - 5.6 Dead load 173
    - 5.6.1 Simplified methods of analysis (beam analogy method) 173

5.6.2	Refined methods of analysis	174
5.7	Live load	174
5.7.1	Simplified methods of analysis	174
5.7.2	Refined methods of analysis	202
5.8	Idealization of structure and interpretation of results	203
5.8.1	General	203
5.8.2	Effective flange widths for bending	203
5.8.3	Idealization for analysis	207
5.9	Refined methods of analysis for short- and medium-span bridges	207
5.9.1	Selection of methods of analysis	207
5.9.2	Specific applications	207
5.9.3	Model analysis	207
5.10	Long-span bridges	210
5.10.1	General	210
5.10.2	Cable-stayed bridges	210
5.10.3	Suspension bridges	210
5.11	Dynamic analysis	210
5.11.1	General requirements of structural analysis	210
5.11.2	Elastic dynamic responses	211
5.11.3	Inelastic-dynamic responses	211
5.11.4	Analysis for collision loads	211
5.11.5	Seismic analysis	211
5.12	Stability and magnification of force effects	212
5.12.1	General	212
5.12.2	Member stability analysis for magnification of member bending moments	212
5.12.3	Structural stability analysis for lateral sway	212
5.12.4	Structural stability analysis for assemblies of individual members	212A

*Annexes*

A5.1 (normative)	— Factors affecting structural response	213
A5.2 (informative)	— Two-dimensional analysis	217

**Section 6 — Foundations** 225

6.1	Scope	227
6.2	Definitions	227
6.3	Abbreviations and symbols	229
6.3.1	Abbreviations	229
6.3.2	Symbols	229
6.4	Design requirements	230
6.4.1	Limit states	230
6.4.2	Effects on surroundings	231
6.4.3	Effects on structure	231
6.4.4	Components	231
6.4.5	Consultation	231
6.4.6	Inspection and quality control	231
6.5	Geotechnical investigation	231
6.5.1	General	231
6.5.2	Investigation procedures	232
6.5.3	Geotechnical parameters	232
6.5.4	Shallow foundations	232
6.5.5	Deep foundations	232
6.5.6	Report	232
6.6	Resistance and deformation	233
6.6.1	General	233
6.6.2	Ultimate limit state	233

May 2010

(Replaces p. ix, November 2006)

- 6.6.3 Serviceability limit state 234
- 6.7 Shallow foundations 235
  - 6.7.1 General 235
  - 6.7.2 Calculated geotechnical resistance at ULS 235
  - 6.7.3 Pressure distribution 237
  - 6.7.4 Effect of load inclination 238
  - 6.7.5 Factored geotechnical horizontal resistance 239
- 6.8 Deep foundations 240
  - 6.8.1 General 240
  - 6.8.2 Selection of deep foundation units 240
  - 6.8.3 Vertical load transfer 240
  - 6.8.4 Downdrag 240
  - 6.8.5 Factored geotechnical axial resistance 240
  - 6.8.6 Group effects — Vertical loads 241
  - 6.8.7 Factored geotechnical lateral resistance 241
  - 6.8.8 Structural resistance 242
  - 6.8.9 Embedment and spacing 242
  - 6.8.10 Pile shoes and splices 243
- 6.9 Lateral and vertical pressures 243
  - 6.9.1 General 243
  - 6.9.2 Lateral pressures 243
  - 6.9.3 Compaction surcharge 244
  - 6.9.4 Effects of loads 245
  - 6.9.5 Surcharge 245
  - 6.9.6 Wheel load distribution through fill 245
- 6.10 Ground anchors 246
  - 6.10.1 Application 246
  - 6.10.2 Design 246
  - 6.10.3 Materials and installation 246
  - 6.10.4 Anchor testing 247
- 6.11 Sheet pile structures 247
  - 6.11.1 Application 247
  - 6.11.2 Design 247
  - 6.11.3 Ties and anchors 248
  - 6.11.4 Cellular sheet pile structures 248
- 6.12 MSE structures 248
  - 6.12.1 Application 248
  - 6.12.2 Design 248
  - 6.12.3 Backfill 249
- 6.13 Pole foundations 249
  - 6.13.1 Application 249
  - 6.13.2 Design 249
- Section 7 — Buried structures 251**
  - 7.1 Scope 252
  - 7.2 Definitions 252
  - 7.3 Abbreviation and symbols 254
    - 7.3.1 Abbreviation 254
    - 7.3.2 Symbols 254
  - 7.4 Hydraulic design 258
  - 7.5 Structural design 259
    - 7.5.1 Limit states 259
    - 7.5.2 Load factors 260
    - 7.5.3 Material resistance factors 260
    - 7.5.4 Geotechnical considerations 261

- 7.5.5 Seismic requirements 262
- 7.5.6 Minimum clear spacing between conduits 262
- 7.6 Soil-metal structures 263
  - 7.6.1 General 263
  - 7.6.2 Structural materials 265
  - 7.6.3 Design criteria 266
  - 7.6.4 Additional design requirements 271
  - 7.6.5 Construction 273
  - 7.6.6 Special features 275
  - 7.6.7 Site supervision and construction control 275
- 7.7 Metal box structures 276
  - 7.7.1 General 276
  - 7.7.2 Structural materials 276
  - 7.7.3 Design criteria 277
  - 7.7.4 Additional design considerations 278
  - 7.7.5 Construction 278
  - 7.7.6 Special features 279
  - 7.7.7 Site supervision and construction control 279
- 7.8 Reinforced concrete buried structures 279
  - 7.8.1 Standards for structural components 279
  - 7.8.2 Standards for joint gaskets for precast concrete units 280
  - 7.8.3 Installation criteria 280
  - 7.8.4 Loads and load combinations 287
  - 7.8.5 Earth pressure distribution from loads 288
  - 7.8.6 Analysis 291
  - 7.8.7 Ultimate limit state 291
  - 7.8.8 Strength design 292
  - 7.8.9 Serviceability limit state 295
  - 7.8.10 Fatigue limit state 295
  - 7.8.11 Minimum reinforcement 295
  - 7.8.12 Distribution reinforcement 296
  - 7.8.13 Details of the reinforcement 296
  - 7.8.14 Joint shear for top slab of precast concrete box sections with depth of cover less than 0.6 m 297
  - 7.8.15 Construction 297

## **Section 8 — Concrete structures 301**

- 8.1 Scope 304
- 8.2 Definitions 304
- 8.3 Symbols 307
- 8.4 Materials 313
  - 8.4.1 Concrete 313
  - 8.4.2 Reinforcing bars and deformed wire 316
  - 8.4.3 Tendons 316
  - 8.4.4 Anchorages, mechanical connections, and ducts 317
  - 8.4.5 Grout 318
  - 8.4.6 Material resistance factors 318
- 8.5 Limit states 319
  - 8.5.1 General 319
  - 8.5.2 Serviceability limit states 319
  - 8.5.3 Fatigue limit state 319
  - 8.5.4 Ultimate limit states 320
- 8.6 Design considerations 320
  - 8.6.1 General 320
  - 8.6.2 Design 320
  - 8.6.3 Buckling 323

- 8.7 Prestressing 323
  - 8.7.1 Stress limitations for tendons 323
  - 8.7.2 Concrete strength at transfer 324
  - 8.7.3 Grouting 324
  - 8.7.4 Loss of prestress 324
- 8.8 Flexure and axial loads 326
  - 8.8.1 General 326
  - 8.8.2 Assumptions for the serviceability and fatigue limit states 326
  - 8.8.3 Assumptions for the ultimate limit states 327
  - 8.8.4 Flexural components 327
  - 8.8.5 Compression components 328
  - 8.8.6 Tension components 331
  - 8.8.7 Bearing 331
- 8.9 Shear and torsion 331
  - 8.9.1 General 331
  - 8.9.2 Design procedures 332
  - 8.9.3 Sectional design model 333
  - 8.9.4 Slabs, walls, and footings 337
  - 8.9.5 Interface shear transfer 337
- 8.10 Strut-and-tie model 338
  - 8.10.1 General 338
  - 8.10.2 Structural idealization 338
  - 8.10.3 Proportioning of a compressive strut 339
  - 8.10.4 Proportioning of a tension tie 340
  - 8.10.5 Proportioning of node regions 340
  - 8.10.6 Crack control reinforcement 340
- 8.11 Durability 341
  - 8.11.1 Deterioration mechanisms 341
  - 8.11.2 Protective measures 341
  - 8.11.3 Detailing for durability 346
- 8.12 Control of cracking 347
  - 8.12.1 General 347
  - 8.12.2 Distribution of reinforcement 347
  - 8.12.3 Reinforcement 347
  - 8.12.4 Crack control in the side faces of beams 348
  - 8.12.5 Flanges of T-beams 348
  - 8.12.6 Shrinkage and temperature reinforcement 348
- 8.13 Deformation 348
  - 8.13.1 General 348
  - 8.13.2 Dimensional changes 349
  - 8.13.3 Deflections and rotations 349
- 8.14 Details of reinforcement and special detailing requirements 350
  - 8.14.1 Hooks and bends 350
  - 8.14.2 Spacing of reinforcement 351
  - 8.14.3 Transverse reinforcement for flexural components 352
  - 8.14.4 Transverse reinforcement for compression components 352
  - 8.14.5 Reinforcement for shear and torsion 353
  - 8.14.6 Maximum spacing of reinforcement for shear and torsion 353
- 8.15 Development and splices 353
  - 8.15.1 Development 353
  - 8.15.2 Development of reinforcing bars and deformed wire in tension 355
  - 8.15.3 Development of reinforcing bars in compression 356
  - 8.15.4 Development of pretensioning strand 357
  - 8.15.5 Development of standard hooks in tension 357

- 8.15.6 Combination development length 358
- 8.15.7 Development of welded wire fabric in tension 358
- 8.15.8 Mechanical anchorages 358
- 8.15.9 Splicing of reinforcement 358
- 8.16 Anchorage zone reinforcement 360
  - 8.16.1 General 360
  - 8.16.2 Post-tensioning anchorage zones 360
  - 8.16.3 Pretensioning anchorage zones 363
  - 8.16.4 Inclined anchorages 363
  - 8.16.5 Intermediate anchorages 363
  - 8.16.6 Anchorage blisters 363
  - 8.16.7 Anchorage of attachments 363
- 8.17 Seismic design and detailing 366
- 8.18 Special provisions for deck slabs 367
  - 8.18.1 Design methods 367
  - 8.18.2 Minimum slab thickness 367
  - 8.18.3 Allowance for wear 367
  - 8.18.4 Empirical design method 367
  - 8.18.5 Diaphragms 370
  - 8.18.6 Edge stiffening 370
  - 8.18.7 Distribution reinforcement 370
- 8.19 Composite construction 372
  - 8.19.1 General 372
  - 8.19.2 Flexure 372
  - 8.19.3 Shear 372
  - 8.19.4 Semi-continuous structures 372
- 8.20 Concrete girders 373
  - 8.20.1 General 373
  - 8.20.2 Effective flange width for T- and box girders 373
  - 8.20.3 Flange thickness for T- and box girders 373
  - 8.20.4 Isolated girders 373
  - 8.20.5 Top and bottom flange reinforcement for cast-in-place T- and box girders 373
  - 8.20.6 Post-tensioning tendons 374
  - 8.20.7 Diaphragms 374
- 8.21 Multi-beam decks 374
- 8.22 Segmental construction 374
  - 8.22.1 General 374
  - 8.22.2 Additional ducts and anchorages 374
  - 8.22.3 Diaphragms 375
  - 8.22.4 Deviators for external tendons 375
  - 8.22.5 Coupling of post-tensioning tendons 375
  - 8.22.6 Special provisions for various bridge types 375
  - 8.22.7 Precast segmental beam bridges 377
- 8.23 Concrete piles 378
  - 8.23.1 General 378
  - 8.23.2 Specified concrete strength 378
  - 8.23.3 Handling 378
  - 8.23.4 Splices 378
  - 8.23.5 Pile dimensions 378
  - 8.23.6 Non-prestressed concrete piles 378
  - 8.23.7 Prestressed concrete piles 379

**Section 9 — Wood structures 381**

- 9.1 Scope 384
- 9.2 Definitions 384

- 9.3 Symbols 386
- 9.4 Limit states 388
  - 9.4.1 General 388
  - 9.4.2 Serviceability limit states 388
  - 9.4.3 Ultimate limit states 388
  - 9.4.4 Resistance factor 388
- 9.5 General design 389
  - 9.5.1 Design assumption 389
  - 9.5.2 Spans 389
  - 9.5.3 Load-duration factor 389
  - 9.5.4 Size-effect factors 389
  - 9.5.5 Service condition 389
  - 9.5.6 Load-sharing factor 389
  - 9.5.7 Notched components 390
  - 9.5.8 Butt joint stiffness factor 390
  - 9.5.9 Treatment factor 391
- 9.6 Flexure 391
  - 9.6.1 Flexural resistance 391
  - 9.6.2 Size effect 391
  - 9.6.3 Lateral stability 392
- 9.7 Shear 392
  - 9.7.1 Shear resistance 392
  - 9.7.2 Size effect 393
  - 9.7.3 Shear force and shear load 393
  - 9.7.4 Shear modulus 393
  - 9.7.5 Vertically laminated decks 393
- 9.8 Compression members 393
  - 9.8.1 General 393
  - 9.8.2 Compressive resistance parallel to grain 394
  - 9.8.3 Slenderness effect 394
  - 9.8.4 Amplified moments 396
  - 9.8.5 Rigorous evaluation of amplified moments 396
  - 9.8.6 Approximate evaluation of amplified moments 398
- 9.9 Tension members 399
- 9.10 Compression at an angle to grain 400
- 9.11 Sawn wood 401
  - 9.11.1 Materials 401
  - 9.11.2 Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity 401
- 9.12 Glued-laminated timber 404
  - 9.12.1 Materials 404
  - 9.12.2 Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity 404
  - 9.12.3 Vertically laminated beams 405
  - 9.12.4 Camber 405
  - 9.12.5 Varying depth 405
  - 9.12.6 Curved members 406
- 9.13 Structural composite lumber 406
  - 9.13.1 Materials 406
  - 9.13.2 Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity 406
- 9.14 Wood piles 406
  - 9.14.1 Materials 406
  - 9.14.2 Splicing 406
  - 9.14.3 Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity 406
  - 9.14.4 Design 407
- 9.15 Fastenings 407



- 9.15.1 General 407
- 9.15.2 Design 408
- 9.15.3 Construction 408
- 9.16 Hardware and metalwork 408
- 9.17 Durability 408
  - 9.17.1 General 408
  - 9.17.2 Pedestrian contact 408
  - 9.17.3 Incising 408
  - 9.17.4 Fabrication 409
  - 9.17.5 Pressure preservative treatment of laminated veneer lumber 409
  - 9.17.6 Pressure preservative treatment of parallel strand lumber 409
  - 9.17.7 Field treatment 409
  - 9.17.8 Treated round wood piles 409
  - 9.17.9 Untreated round wood piles 409
  - 9.17.10 Pile heads 409
  - 9.17.11 Protective treatment of hardware and metalwork 409
  - 9.17.12 Stress-laminated timber decking 410
- 9.18 Wood cribs 410
  - 9.18.1 General 410
  - 9.18.2 Member sizes and assembly 410
  - 9.18.3 Fastening 410
  - 9.18.4 Load transfer to cribs 410
- 9.19 Wood trestles 411
  - 9.19.1 General 411
  - 9.19.2 Pile bents 411
  - 9.19.3 Framed bents 411
  - 9.19.4 Caps 411
  - 9.19.5 Bracing 411
- 9.20 Stringers and girders 411
  - 9.20.1 Design details 411
  - 9.20.2 Diaphragms 412
- 9.21 Nail-laminated wood decks 412
  - 9.21.1 General 412
  - 9.21.2 Transversely laminated wood decks 412
  - 9.21.3 Longitudinal nail-laminated wood decks 413
- 9.22 Wood-concrete composite decks 413
  - 9.22.1 General 413
  - 9.22.2 Wood base 413
  - 9.22.3 Concrete slab 414
  - 9.22.4 Wood-concrete interface 415
  - 9.22.5 Factored moment resistance 416
- 9.23 Stress-laminated wood decks 417
  - 9.23.1 General 417
  - 9.23.2 Post-tensioning materials 417
  - 9.23.3 Design of post-tensioning system 417
  - 9.23.4 Design of distribution bulkhead 419
  - 9.23.5 Laminated decks 421
  - 9.23.6 Net section 422
  - 9.23.7 Hardware durability 422
  - 9.23.8 Design details 423
- 9.24 Wearing course 423
- 9.25 Drainage 423
  - 9.25.1 General 423
  - 9.25.2 Deck 424

<b>Section 10 — Steel structures</b>	<b>425</b>
10.1	Scope 428
10.2	Definitions 428
10.3	Abbreviations and symbols 430
10.3.1	Abbreviations 430
10.3.2	Symbols 430
10.4	Materials 437
10.4.1	General 437
10.4.2	Structural steel 437
10.4.3	Cast steel 437
10.4.4	Stainless steel 438
10.4.5	Bolts 438
10.4.6	Welding electrodes 438
10.4.7	Stud shear connectors 438
10.4.8	Cables 438
10.4.9	High-strength bars 438
10.4.10	Galvanizing and metallizing 438
10.4.11	Identification 438
10.4.12	Coefficient of thermal expansion 439
10.4.13	Pins and rollers 439
10.5	Design theory and assumptions 439
10.5.1	General 439
10.5.2	Ultimate limit states 439
10.5.3	Serviceability limit states 439
10.5.4	Fatigue limit state 439
10.5.5	Fracture control 440
10.5.6	Seismic requirements 440
10.5.7	Resistance factors 440
10.5.8	Analysis 440
10.5.9	Design lengths of members 440
10.6	Durability 441
10.6.1	General 441
10.6.2	Corrosion as a deterioration mechanism 441
10.6.3	Corrosion protection 441
10.6.4	Superstructure components 441
10.6.5	Other components 442
10.6.6	Areas inaccessible after erection 444
10.6.7	Detailing for durability 444
10.7	Design details 444
10.7.1	General 444
10.7.2	Minimum thickness of steel 444
10.7.3	Floor beams and diaphragms at piers and abutments 445
10.7.4	Camber 445
10.7.5	Welded attachments 446
10.8	Tension members 446
10.8.1	General 446
10.8.2	Axial tensile resistance 447
10.8.3	Axial tension and bending 447
10.8.4	Tensile resistance of cables 447
10.9	Compression members 447
10.9.1	General 447
10.9.2	Width-to-thickness ratio of elements in compression 448
10.9.3	Axial compressive resistance 450
10.9.4	Axial compression and bending 451

10.9.5	Composite columns	453
10.10	Beams and girders	455
10.10.1	General	455
10.10.2	Class 1 and 2 sections	455
10.10.3	Class 3 sections	457
10.10.4	Stiffened plate girders	457
10.10.5	Shear resistance	458
10.10.6	Intermediate transverse stiffeners	459
10.10.7	Longitudinal web stiffeners	460
10.10.8	Bearing stiffeners	461
10.10.9	Lateral bracing, cross-frames, and diaphragms	462
10.11	Composite beams and girders	463
10.11.1	General	463
10.11.2	Proportioning	463
10.11.3	Effects of creep and shrinkage	463
10.11.4	Control of permanent deflections	463
10.11.5	Class 1 and Class 2 sections	463
10.11.6	Class 3 sections	467
10.11.7	Stiffened plate girders	469
10.11.8	Shear connectors	470
10.11.9	Lateral bracing, cross-frames, and diaphragms	472
10.12	Composite box girders	472
10.12.1	General	472
10.12.2	Effective width of tension flanges	472
10.12.3	Web plates	472
10.12.4	Flange-to-web welds	472
10.12.5	Moment resistance	472
10.12.6	Diaphragms, cross-frames, and lateral bracing	474
10.12.7	Multiple box girders	475
10.12.8	Single box girders	475
10.13	Horizontally curved girders	476
10.13.1	General	476
10.13.2	Special considerations	476
10.13.3	Design theory	477
10.13.4	Bearings	477
10.13.5	Diaphragms, cross-frames, and lateral bracing	477
10.13.6	Steel I-girders	478
10.13.7	Composite box girders	480
10.13.8	Camber	482
10.14	Trusses	482
10.14.1	General	482
10.14.2	Built-up members	482
10.14.3	Bracing	483
10.15	Arches	484
10.15.1	General	484
10.15.2	Width-to-thickness ratios	484
10.15.3	Longitudinal web stiffeners	484
10.15.4	Axial compression and bending	484
10.15.5	Arch ties	485
10.16	Orthotropic decks	485
10.16.1	General	485
10.16.2	Effective width of deck	485
10.16.3	Superposition of local and global effects	485
10.16.4	Deflection	486

- 10.16.5 Girder diaphragms 486
- 10.16.6 Design detail requirements 486
- 10.16.7 Wearing surface 487
- 10.17 Structural fatigue 488
- 10.17.1 General 488
- 10.17.2 Live-load-induced fatigue 488
- 10.17.3 Distortion-induced fatigue 500
- 10.17.4 Orthotropic decks 501
- 10.18 Splices and connections 501
- 10.18.1 General 501
- 10.18.2 Bolted connections 502
- 10.18.3 Welds 504
- 10.18.4 Detailing of bolted connections 505
- 10.18.5 Connection reinforcement and stiffening 508
- 10.19 Anchor rods 509
- 10.19.1 General 509
- 10.19.2 Anchor rod resistance 509
- 10.20 Pins, rollers, and rockers 510
- 10.20.1 Bearing resistance 510
- 10.20.2 Pins 510
- 10.21 Torsion 511
- 10.21.1 General 511
- 10.21.2 Members of closed cross-section 511
- 10.21.3 Members of open cross-section 512
- 10.22 Steel piles 513
- 10.22.1 General 513
- 10.22.2 Resistance factors 513
- 10.22.3 Compressive resistance 513
- 10.22.4 Unsupported length 513
- 10.22.5 Effective length factor 513
- 10.22.6 Splices 513
- 10.22.7 Welding 513
- 10.22.8 Composite tube piles 513
- 10.23 Fracture control 514
- 10.23.1 General 514
- 10.23.2 Identification 514
- 10.23.3 Fracture toughness 514
- 10.23.4 Welding of fracture-critical and primary tension members 515
- 10.23.5 Welding corrections and repairs to fracture-critical members 516
- 10.23.6 Non-destructive testing of fracture-critical members 519
- 10.24 Construction requirements for structural steel 519
- 10.24.1 General 519
- 10.24.2 Submissions 519
- 10.24.3 Materials 520
- 10.24.4 Fabrication 520
- 10.24.5 Welded construction 523
- 10.24.6 Bolted construction 524
- 10.24.7 Tolerances 527
- 10.24.8 Quality control 528
- 10.24.9 Transportation and delivery 529
- 10.24.10 Erection 529

## **Section 11 — Joints and bearings 531**

- 11.1 Scope 532
- 11.2 Definitions 532

11.3	Abbreviations and symbols	533
11.3.1	Abbreviations	533
11.3.2	Symbols	534
11.4	Common requirements	534
11.4.1	General	534
11.4.2	Design requirements	535
11.5	Deck joints	535
11.5.1	General requirements	535
11.5.2	Selection	536
11.5.3	Design	537
11.5.4	Fabrication	537
11.5.5	Installation	538
11.5.6	Joint seals	538
11.5.7	Sealed joint drainage	538
11.5.8	Open joint drainage	538
11.5.9	Volume control joint	538
11.6	Bridge bearings	538
11.6.1	General	538
11.6.2	Metal back, roller, and spherical bearings	539
11.6.3	Sliding surfaces	540
11.6.4	Spherical bearings	543
11.6.5	Pot bearings	544
11.6.6	Elastomeric bearings	545
11.6.7	Disc bearings	548
11.6.8	Guides for lateral restraints	549
11.6.9	Other bearing systems	550
11.6.10	Load plates and attachment for bearings	550
<b>Section 12 — Barriers and highway accessory supports</b> 551		
12.1	Scope	552
12.2	Definitions	552
12.3	Abbreviations and symbols	553
12.3.1	Abbreviations	553
12.3.2	Symbols	553
12.4	Barriers	554
12.4.1	General	554
12.4.2	Barrier joints	554
12.4.3	Traffic barriers	554
12.4.4	Pedestrian barriers	562
12.4.5	Bicycle barriers	563
12.4.6	Combination barriers	564
12.5	Highway accessory supports	564
12.5.1	General	564
12.5.2	Vertical clearances	564
12.5.3	Maintenance	564
12.5.4	Aesthetics	564
12.5.5	Design	564
12.5.6	Breakaway supports	566
12.5.7	Foundations	566
12.5.8	Corrosion protection	567
12.5.9	Minimum thicknesses	567
12.5.10	Camber	567
12.5.11	Connections	567

**Section 13 — Movable bridges 569**

- 13.1 Scope 572
- 13.2 Definitions 572
- 13.3 Symbols 572
- 13.4 Materials 573
  - 13.4.1 General 573
  - 13.4.2 Structural steel 573
  - 13.4.3 Concrete 573
  - 13.4.4 Timber 574
  - 13.4.5 Carbon steel 574
  - 13.4.6 Forged steel 574
  - 13.4.7 Cast steel or iron 574
  - 13.4.8 Bronze 574
  - 13.4.9 Bolts 574
  - 13.4.10 Wire rope 574
- 13.5 General design requirements 574
  - 13.5.1 General 574
  - 13.5.2 Type of deck 574
  - 13.5.3 Piers and abutments 574
  - 13.5.4 Navigation requirements 574
  - 13.5.5 Vessel collision 574
  - 13.5.6 Protection of traffic 575
  - 13.5.7 Fire protection 575
  - 13.5.8 Time of operation 575
  - 13.5.9 Aligning and locking 575
  - 13.5.10 Houses for machinery, electrical equipment, and operators 575
  - 13.5.11 New devices 575
  - 13.5.12 Access for routine maintenance 575
  - 13.5.13 Durability 576
- 13.6 Movable bridge components 576
  - 13.6.1 General features 576
  - 13.6.2 Swing bridge components 580
  - 13.6.3 Bascule bridge components 583
  - 13.6.4 Rolling lift bridge components 583
  - 13.6.5 Vertical lift bridge components 584
- 13.7 Structural analysis and design 589
  - 13.7.1 General 589
  - 13.7.2 Design theory and assumptions 589
  - 13.7.3 Wind loads 589
  - 13.7.4 Seismic loads 590
  - 13.7.5 Reaction due to temperature differential 590
  - 13.7.6 Hydraulic cylinder connections 591
  - 13.7.7 Loads on end floor beams and stringer brackets 591
  - 13.7.8 Swing bridges — Ultimate limit states 591
  - 13.7.9 Bascule (including rolling lift) bridges — Ultimate limit states 592
  - 13.7.10 Vertical lift bridges — Ultimate limit states 593
  - 13.7.11 Dead load factor 593
  - 13.7.12 All movable bridges — Ultimate limit states 594
  - 13.7.13 Special types of movable bridges 594
  - 13.7.14 Load effects 594
  - 13.7.15 Fatigue limit state 594
  - 13.7.16 Friction 594
  - 13.7.17 Machinery supports 594
  - 13.7.18 Vertical lift bridge towers 594

- 13.7.19 Transitory loads 594
- 13.8 Mechanical system design 594
  - 13.8.1 General 594
  - 13.8.2 Operating machinery 595
  - 13.8.3 Power sources 595
  - 13.8.4 Prime mover 595
  - 13.8.5 Power requirements for main machinery 596
  - 13.8.6 Wedges 596
  - 13.8.7 Brakes 597
  - 13.8.8 Frictional resistance 598
  - 13.8.9 Torque 599
  - 13.8.10 Application of worker power 601
  - 13.8.11 Machinery loads 601
  - 13.8.12 Allowable stresses for machinery and allowable hydraulic pressures 601
  - 13.8.13 Bearing pressures (moving surfaces) 603
  - 13.8.14 Line-bearing pressure 605
  - 13.8.15 Design of wire ropes 605
  - 13.8.16 Shafting 607
  - 13.8.17 Machinery fabrication and installation 608
  - 13.8.18 Lubrication 614
  - 13.8.19 Power equipment 615
  - 13.8.20 Quality of work 617
- 13.9 Hydraulic system design 618
- 13.10 Electrical system design 619
  - 13.10.1 General 619
  - 13.10.2 *Canadian Electrical Code, Part I* 619
  - 13.10.3 General requirements for electrical installation 619
  - 13.10.4 Working drawings 620
  - 13.10.5 Motor and generator tests 620
  - 13.10.6 Motors — General requirements 621
  - 13.10.7 Motor torque for span operation 621
  - 13.10.8 Motor temperature, insulation, and service factor 622
  - 13.10.9 Number of motors 622
  - 13.10.10 Synchronizing motors for tower-drive vertical lift bridges 622
  - 13.10.11 Speed of motors 622
  - 13.10.12 Gear motors 622
  - 13.10.13 Engine-generator sets 622
  - 13.10.14 Automatic electric power transfer 623
  - 13.10.15 Electrically operated motor brakes 624
  - 13.10.16 Electrically operated machinery brakes 625
  - 13.10.17 Design of electrical parts 625
  - 13.10.18 Electrical control 625
  - 13.10.19 Speed control for span-driving motors 627
  - 13.10.20 Master switches and relays for span-driving motors 628
  - 13.10.21 Programmable logic controllers 628
  - 13.10.22 Resistances and reactors 628
  - 13.10.23 Limit switches 629
  - 13.10.24 Interlocking 629
  - 13.10.25 Switches 629
  - 13.10.26 Circuit breakers and fuses 630
  - 13.10.27 Contact areas 630
  - 13.10.28 Magnetic contactors 630
  - 13.10.29 Overload relays 630
  - 13.10.30 Shunt coils 630

- 13.10.31 Instruments 630
- 13.10.32 Protection of electrical equipment 631
- 13.10.33 Cast iron in electrical parts 631
- 13.10.34 Position indicators and meters 631
- 13.10.35 Indicating lights 631
- 13.10.36 Control console 631
- 13.10.37 Control panels 632
- 13.10.38 Enclosures for panel boards 632
- 13.10.39 Electrical wires and cables 632
- 13.10.40 Tagging of wires 633
- 13.10.41 Wire splices and connections 633
- 13.10.42 Raceways, metal conduits, conduit fittings, and boxes 633
- 13.10.43 Electrical connections between fixed and moving parts 634
- 13.10.44 Electrical connections across the navigable channel 635
- 13.10.45 Service lights 635
- 13.10.46 Navigation lights 636
- 13.10.47 Aircraft warning lights 636
- 13.10.48 Circuits 636
- 13.10.49 Grounding and lightning protection 636
- 13.10.50 Spare parts 636
- 13.11 Construction 637
  - 13.11.1 Shop assemblies 637
  - 13.11.2 Coating 637
  - 13.11.3 Erection 637
- 13.12 Training and start-up assistance 639
- 13.13 Operating and maintenance manual 639
- 13.14 Inspection 640

#### **Section 14 — Evaluation 641**

- 14.1 Scope 643
- 14.2 Definitions 643
- 14.3 Symbols 643
- 14.4 General requirements 646
  - 14.4.1 Exclusions 646
  - 14.4.2 Expertise 646
  - 14.4.3 Future growth of traffic or future deterioration 647
  - 14.4.4 Scope of evaluation 647
- 14.5 Evaluation procedures 647
  - 14.5.1 General 647
  - 14.5.2 Limit states 647
  - 14.5.3 Deleted
  - 14.5.4 Evaluation methodology 648
  - 14.5.5 Bridge posting 648
- 14.6 Condition inspection 648
  - 14.6.1 General 648
  - 14.6.2 Plans 649
  - 14.6.3 Physical features 649
  - 14.6.4 Deterioration 649
- 14.7 Material strengths 649
  - 14.7.1 General 649
  - 14.7.2 Review of original construction documents 649
  - 14.7.3 Analysis of tests of samples 649
  - 14.7.4 Strengths based on date of construction 650
  - 14.7.5 Deteriorated material 651
- 14.8 Permanent loads 651



- 14.8.1 General 651
- 14.8.2 Dead load 651
- 14.8.3 Earth pressure and hydrostatic pressure 652
- 14.8.4 Shrinkage, creep, differential settlement, and bearing friction 652
- 14.8.5 Secondary effects from prestressing 652
- 14.9 Transitory loads 652
  - 14.9.1 Normal traffic 652
  - 14.9.2 Permit — Vehicle loads 656
  - 14.9.3 Dynamic load allowance for permit vehicle loads and alternative loading 657
  - 14.9.4 Multiple-lane loading 657
  - 14.9.5 Loads other than traffic 658
- 14.10 Exceptional loads 659
- 14.11 Lateral distribution categories for live load 659
  - 14.11.1 General 659
  - 14.11.2 Statically determinate method 659
  - 14.11.3 Sophisticated method 659
  - 14.11.4 Simplified method 659
- 14.12 Target reliability index 659
  - 14.12.1 General 659
  - 14.12.2 System behaviour 660
  - 14.12.3 Element behaviour 660
  - 14.12.4 Inspection level 660
  - 14.12.5 Important structures 660
- 14.13 Load factors 661
  - 14.13.1 General 661
  - 14.13.2 Permanent loads 662
  - 14.13.3 Transitory loads 662
- 14.14 Resistance 665
  - 14.14.1 General 665
  - 14.14.2 Resistance adjustment factor 672
  - 14.14.3 Effects of defects and deterioration 673
- 14.15 Live load capacity factor 674
  - 14.15.1 General 674
  - 14.15.2 Ultimate limit states 674
  - 14.15.3 Serviceability limit states 675
  - 14.15.4 Combined load effects 675
- 14.16 Load testing 675
  - 14.16.1 General 675
  - 14.16.2 Instrumentation 676
  - 14.16.3 Test load 676
  - 14.16.4 Application of load test results 676
- 14.17 Bridge posting 677
  - 14.17.1 General 677
  - 14.17.2 Calculation of posting loads 677
  - 14.17.3 Posting signs 678
- 14.18 Fatigue 679

#### Annexes

- A14.1 (normative) — Equivalent material strengths from tests of samples 680
- A14.2 (normative) — Evaluation Level 1 (vehicle trains) in Ontario 682
- A14.3 (normative) — Evaluation Level 2 (two-unit vehicles) in Ontario 683
- A14.4 (normative) — Evaluation Level 3 (single-unit vehicles) in Ontario 684

**Section 15 — Rehabilitation and repair 687**

- 15.1 Scope 688
- 15.2 Symbols 688
- 15.3 General requirements 688
  - 15.3.1 Limit states 688
  - 15.3.2 Condition data 688
  - 15.3.3 Rehabilitation loads and load factors 688
  - 15.3.4 Analysis 688
  - 15.3.5 Factored resistances 688
  - 15.3.6 Fatigue 688
  - 15.3.7 Bridge posting 689
  - 15.3.8 Seismic upgrading 689
- 15.4 Special considerations 689
- 15.5 Data collection 689
- 15.6 Rehabilitation loads and load factors 689
  - 15.6.1 Loads 689
  - 15.6.2 Load factors and load combinations 691
- 15.7 Analysis 692
- 15.8 Resistance 692
  - 15.8.1 Existing members 692
  - 15.8.2 New members 692

**Section 16 — Fibre-reinforced structures 693**

- 16.1 Scope 695
  - 16.1.1 Components 695
  - 16.1.2 Fibres 695
  - 16.1.3 Matrices 695
  - 16.1.4 Uses requiring Approval 695
- 16.2 Definitions 695
- 16.3 Abbreviations and symbols 697
  - 16.3.1 Abbreviations 697
  - 16.3.2 Symbols 698
- 16.4 Durability 701
  - 16.4.1 FRP tendons, primary reinforcement, and strengthening systems 701
  - 16.4.2 FRP secondary reinforcement 701
  - 16.4.3 Fibres in FRC 701
  - 16.4.4 Cover to reinforcement 702
  - 16.4.5 Protective measures 702
  - 16.4.6 Allowance for wear in deck slabs 702
  - 16.4.7 Detailing of concrete components for durability 702
  - 16.4.8 Handling, storage, and installation of fibre tendons and primary reinforcement 702
- 16.5 Fibre-reinforced polymers 702
  - 16.5.1 Material properties 702
  - 16.5.2 Confirmation of the specified tensile strength 702
  - 16.5.3 Resistance factor 703
- 16.6 Fibre-reinforced concrete 703
  - 16.6.1 General 703
  - 16.6.2 Fibre volume fraction 703
  - 16.6.3 Fibre dispersion in concrete 704
- 16.7 Externally restrained deck slabs 704
  - 16.7.1 General 704
  - 16.7.2 Full-depth cast-in-place deck slabs 705
  - 16.7.3 Cast-in-place deck slabs on stay-in-place formwork 706
  - 16.7.4 Full-depth precast concrete deck slabs 706
- 16.8 Concrete beams and slabs 711

16.8.1	General	711
16.8.2	Deformability and minimum reinforcement	711
16.8.3	Non-prestressed reinforcement	712
16.8.4	Development length for FRP bars and tendons	712
16.8.5	Development length for FRP grids	712
16.8.6	Tendons	712
16.8.7	Design for shear	713
16.8.8	Internally restrained cast-in-place deck slabs	714
16.9	Stressed wood decks	715
16.9.1	General	715
16.9.2	Post-tensioning materials	715
16.9.3	Post-tensioning system	715
16.9.4	Stressing procedure	716
16.9.5	Design of bulkheads	716
16.9.6	Stressed log bridges	716
16.10	Barrier walls	718
16.11	Rehabilitation of existing concrete structures with FRP	719
16.11.1	General	719
16.11.2	Flexural and axial load rehabilitation	720
16.11.3	Shear rehabilitation with externally bonded FRP systems	722
16.12	Rehabilitation of timber bridges	724
16.12.1	General	724
16.12.2	Strengthening for flexure	725
16.12.3	Strengthening for shear	726

#### Annexes

A16.1 (normative)	— Installation of FRP strengthening systems	729
A16.2 (normative)	— Quality control for FRP strengthening systems	732

#### Tables

<b>1.1</b>	— Highway classes	17
<b>3.1</b>	— Load factors and load combinations	49
<b>3.2</b>	— Permanent loads — Maximum and minimum values of load factors for ULS	50
<b>3.3</b>	— Unit material weights	51
<b>3.4</b>	— Number of design lanes	52
<b>3.5</b>	— Modification factor for multi-lane loading	55
<b>3.6</b>	— Loads on traffic barriers	57
<b>3.7</b>	— Maximum and minimum effective temperatures	59
<b>3.8</b>	— Wind exposure coefficient, $C_e$	62
<b>3.9</b>	— Modification of wind loads on superstructure with skew angle	64
<b>3.10</b>	— Longitudinal drag coefficient, $C_D$	66
<b>3.11</b>	— Lateral load coefficient, $C_L$	66
<b>4.1</b>	— Seismic performance zones	123
<b>4.2</b>	— Minimum analysis requirements for multi-span bridges	124
<b>4.3</b>	— Regular bridge requirements	125
<b>4.4</b>	— Site coefficient, $S$	125
<b>4.5</b>	— Response modification factor, $R$	127
<b>4.6</b>	— Modification factor, $K$	131
<b>4.7</b>	— Site coefficient for seismic isolation design, $S_i$	145
<b>4.8</b>	— Damping coefficient, $B$	147
<b>4.9</b>	— Minimum analysis requirements for evaluation	154
<b>5.1</b>	— Structural responses	168
<b>5.2</b>	— Superstructure categories for simplified methods of analysis for live load	175

- 5.3** —  $F$  and  $C_f$  for longitudinal bending moments in shallow superstructures corresponding to ultimate and serviceability limit states 177
- 5.4** —  $F$  and  $C_f$  for longitudinal bending moments in shallow superstructures corresponding to the fatigue limit state 185
- 5.5** —  $C_e$  for longitudinal bending moments in shallow superstructures corresponding to the fatigue and vibration limit state 187
- 5.6** —  $F$  and  $C_f$  for longitudinal moments in multi-spine bridges 189
- 5.7** —  $F$  for longitudinal vertical shear corresponding to ultimate and serviceability limit states, m 191
- 5.8** —  $F$  for longitudinal vertical shear corresponding to fatigue limit state, m 192
- 5.9** —  $F$  for longitudinal vertical shear in multi-spine bridges 193
- 5.10** — Maximum cantilever moments,  $M_y$ , due to unfactored CL-625 Truck wheel loads (*DLA* included), kN·m/m 196
- 5.11** — Effective deck plate width for a longitudinal rib 205
- 5.12** — Selection of methods of analysis 208
- 6.1** — Geotechnical resistance factors 234
- 6.2** — Equivalent fluid pressure per metre width, kPa/m 244
- 7.1** — Requirements for cut ends 258
- 7.2** — Specific limit states 260
- 7.3** — Material resistance factors 261
- 7.4** — Soil classifications 265
- 7.5** — Secant modulus of soil,  $E_s$ , for various soils 266
- 7.6** — Values for  $k_4$  for calculating equivalent line loads 270
- 7.7** — Minimum transverse distance of backfill in single-conduit soil-metal structures 275
- 7.8** — Standards for precast buried concrete structures 280
- 7.9** — Classification of placed soils 280
- 7.10** — Soils and compaction requirements for standard installations for circular precast concrete pipes 283
- 7.11** — Soils and compaction requirements for standard installations for concrete boxes 284
- 7.12** — Vertical and horizontal arching factors for circular concrete pipes in standard installations 287
- 7.13** — Vertical and horizontal arching factors for box sections in standard installations 288
- 7.14** — Force factors for earth loads 289
- 7.15** — Earth pressure factors 289
- 7.16** — Length factors for earth pressures 290
- 7.17** — Crack-control coefficient,  $C_1$  295
- 7.18** — Shrinkage and temperature reinforcement 296
- 8.1** — Material resistance factors 319
- 8.2** — Prestressing tendon stress limits 324
- 8.3** — Friction factors 325
- 8.4** — Maximum water to cementing materials ratio 341
- 8.5** — Minimum concrete covers and tolerances 344
- 8.6** — Maximum crack width 347
- 8.7** — Minimum bend diameter, mm 350
- 8.8** — Minimum development length of reinforcing bars and deformed wire in tension 355
- 8.9** — Modification factors for development length 356
- 8.10** — Modification factors for hook development length 357
- 8.11** — Classification of lap splices in tension 359
- 8.12** — Construction tolerances 377
- 9.1** — Resistance factor for wood components,  $\phi$  389
- 9.2** — Load-sharing factor for bending, shear, and tension for all species and grades 390
- 9.3** — Values of  $D_e$  390
- 9.4** — Size-effect factors  $k_{sb}$  for flexure and  $k_{sv}$  for shear for all species and grades 392
- 9.5** — Modification factor for lateral stability,  $k_{ls}$  392
- 9.6** — Minimum values of the effective length factor,  $k$  395
- 9.7** —  $A$ ,  $S$ , and  $e_o$  for piles at 0.55 of the effective length below the butt joint 397

- 9.8** —  $\eta$  to be used in calculating  $P_{cr}$  for piles 399
- 9.9** — Size-effect factor,  $k_{st}$ , for tension at net section in dimension lumber 400
- 9.10** — Size-effect factor for bearing,  $k_{sq}$  400
- 9.11** — Permitted species and species combinations for sawn wood 401
- 9.12** — Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity for structural joists and planks, MPa 402
- 9.13** — Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity for beam and stringer grades, MPa 403
- 9.14** — Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity for post and timber grades, MPa 404
- 9.15** — Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity for glued-laminated Douglas fir timber, MPa 405
- 9.16** — Typical specified strengths and moduli of elasticity for structural composite lumber, MPa 406
- 9.17** — Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity for round wood piles, MPa 407
- 9.18** — Limiting pressure perpendicular to grain,  $f_{q\perp}$ , MPa 419
- 9.19** — Minimum section properties for steel channel bulkheads 420
- 10.1** — Corrosion protection for superstructure components 442
- 10.2** — Corrosion protection for other components 443
- 10.3** — Width-to-thickness ratio of elements in compression 449
- 10.4** — Fatigue life constants and constant amplitude threshold stress ranges 489
- 10.5** — Values of  $N_d$  490
- 10.6** — Average daily truck traffic 490
- 10.7** — Detail categories for load-induced fatigue 491
- 10.8** — Detail categories for load-induced fatigue of orthotropic decks 498
- 10.9** — Values of  $k_s$  and  $c_1$  503
- 10.10** — Matching electrode classifications for CSA G40.21 and CSA W59 steels 504
- 10.11** — Minimum edge distance for bolt holes 507
- 10.12** — Impact test temperatures and Charpy impact energy requirements for fracture-critical members 514A
- 10.13** — Impact test temperatures and Charpy impact energy requirements for primary tension members 514A
- 10.14** — Deleted
- 10.14A** — Impact test temperatures and Charpy impact energy requirements for weld metal in fracture-critical members 515
- 10.14B** — Impact test temperatures and Charpy impact energy requirements for weld metal in primary tension members 515
- 10.15** — Preheat and interpass temperature for steel grades 518
- 10.16** — Minimum elapsed time for acceptance testing 519
- 10.17** — Minimum bend radii for bent plates 521
- 10.18** — Nut rotation from snug-tight condition 525
- 10.19** — Facing of bearing surfaces roughness requirements 527
- 11.1** — Dimensions for confined sheet PTFE 541
- 11.2** — Dimensions for stainless steel 541
- 11.3** — Maximum average contact pressure for PTFE, MPa 542
- 11.4** — Design coefficient of friction 543
- 11.5** — Physical properties of polyisoprene and polychloroprene 546
- 12.1** — Highway type factors,  $K_h$  555
- 12.2** — Highway curvature factors,  $K_c$  555
- 12.3** — Highway grade factors,  $K_g$  556
- 12.4** — Superstructure height factors,  $K_s$  556
- 12.5** — Optimum performance levels — Barrier clearance less than or equal to 2.25 m 557
- 12.6** — Optimum performance levels — Barrier clearance greater than 2.25 m and less than or equal to 3.75 m 558
- 12.7** — Optimum performance levels — Barrier clearance greater than 3.75 m 559
- 12.8** — Minimum barrier heights,  $H$  560
- 12.9** — Strengths for aluminum castings 565
- 13.1** — Maximum tensile strength for Grade 1770 bright wire 586
- 13.2** — Maximum tensile strength for Grade 110/120 bright wire 586

- 13.3** — Swing bridges — Special load combinations and load factors 591
- 13.4** — Bascule (including rolling lift) bridges — Special load combinations and load factors 592
- 13.5** — Vertical lift bridges — Special load combinations and load factors 593
- 13.6** — Dead load factor,  $\alpha_D$  593
- 13.7** — Coefficients of friction 598
- 13.8** — Machinery losses and efficiency coefficients 599
- 13.9** — Coefficients of friction for sliding span locks and end and centre wedges 599
- 13.10** — Maximum allowable stresses in trunnions, MPa (psi) 602
- 13.11** — Maximum allowable stresses for machinery parts other than trunnions, MPa (psi) 602
- 13.12** — Maximum bearing pressures 604
- 13.13** — Ultimate stress and ultimate strength of steel wire rope of 6 × 19 classification and 6 × 25 filler construction 606
- 13.14** — Permissible stresses in gear teeth 612
- 13.15** — Fits and finishes 618
- 14.1** — Properties of structural steel 650
- 14.2** — Minimum yield strengths of reinforcing steel, MPa 651
- 14.3** — Modification factors for multiple-lane loading 658
- 14.4** — Fraction of CL1-W loading to be applied in the other lanes 658
- 14.5** — Target reliability index,  $\beta$ , for normal traffic and for PA, PB, and PS traffic 661
- 14.6** — Target reliability index,  $\beta$ , for PC traffic 661
- 14.7** — Maximum dead load factors,  $\alpha_D$  662
- 14.8** — Live load factors,  $\alpha_L$ , for normal traffic (Evaluation Levels 1, 2, and 3) for all types of analysis 662
- 14.9** — Live load factors,  $\alpha_L$ , for normal traffic (alternative loading) for all types of analysis 663
- 14.10** — Live load factors,  $\alpha_L$ , for PA traffic 663
- 14.11** — Live load factors,  $\alpha_L$ , for PB traffic 664
- 14.12** — Live load factors,  $\alpha_L$ , for PC traffic 664
- 14.13** — Live load factors,  $\alpha_L$ , for PS traffic 664
- 14.14** — Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity for beam and stringer grades and post and timber grades, MPa 672
- 14.15** — Resistance adjustment factor,  $U$  673
- 15.1** — Rehabilitation design live loads for restricted normal traffic 690
- 16.1** — Conditions of use for FRP tendons and primary reinforcement 701
- 16.2** —  $\phi_{FRP}$  for pultruded FRP and aramid fibre rope 703
- 16.3** — Minimum values of  $R_i$  for various applications 704
- 16.4** — Maximum permissible stresses in FRP tendons at jacking and transfer for concrete beams and slabs for pretensioning and post-tensioning systems 713
- 16.5** — Values of  $K_{bFRP}$  725

## Figures

- 3.1** — Deflection limits for highway bridge superstructure vibration 48
- 3.2** — CL-W Truck 53
- 3.3** — CL-W Lane Load 54
- 3.4** — Maintenance vehicle load 58
- 3.5** — Modifications to maximum and minimum effective temperatures 59
- 3.6** — Temperature differentials for Type A and C superstructures 60
- 3.7** — Pier nose angle and subtended nose angle for calculating forces due to moving ice 68
- 4.1** — Dimensions for minimum support lengths 131
- 5.1** —  $D_{VE}$  for slab-on-girder bridges 188
- 5.1A** — Definition of  $S_p$  and  $S_e$  194
- 5.2** — Calculation of  $A$  195
- 5.3** — Notation for cantilever moments 196
- 5.4** — Values of  $k$  for calculating transverse vertical shear in shear-connected beam bridges 200
- 5.5** —  $b_e$  and  $b$  for various cross-sections 204

- 5.6** — Effective width of orthotropic deck 206
- 6.1** — Failure mechanism for footing 236
- 6.2** — Footing under eccentric load 236
- 6.3** — Bearing coefficients 237
- 6.4** — Eccentricity limit 238
- 6.5** — Load inclination reduction factors for bearing resistance,  $\phi' = 30^\circ$  239
- 6.6** — Compaction effects 245
- 7.1** —  $D_h$  and  $D_v$  for various shapes of pipe 264
- 7.2** — Values of  $A_f$  267
- 7.3** — Depth of cover,  $H$  and  $H_{min}$ , for soil-metal structures and metal box structures 272
- 7.4** — Trench reinforcement for the foundation of pipe-arches 273
- 7.5** — Longitudinal seam bolting arrangements 274
- 7.6** — Metal box structure dimensional limits 276
- 7.7** — Minimum extent of structural backfill for metal box structures 279
- 7.8** — Terminology and standard installations for circular precast concrete pipes on embankments 281
- 7.9** — Terminology and standard installations for circular precast concrete pipes in trenches 282
- 7.10** — Standard installations for concrete box sections on embankments 285
- 7.11** — Standard installations for concrete box sections in trenches 286
- 7.12** — Earth pressure distribution for standard installations of circular concrete pipes (force diagram) 289
- 7.13** — Lateral earth loads and pressure distribution on concrete box sections due to approaching wheel loads 291
- 8.1** — Magnitude of thrust 322
- 8.2** — Eccentricity of curved tendons 323
- 8.3** — Influence of reinforcement on spacing of diagonal cracks 334
- 8.4** — Influence of anchorage conditions on effective cross-sectional area of strut 339
- 8.5** — Reinforcement in cast-in-place deck slab 368
- 8.6** — Reinforcement for cast-in-place deck slabs designed using the empirical method 369
- 8.7** — Reinforcement for cast-in-place deck slabs on precast panels 369
- 8.8** — Edge stiffening at transverse free edges 371
- 9.1** — Connection of nail-laminated deck to steel beam 413
- 9.2** — Spliced butt joint 414
- 9.3** — Details of wood-concrete interface 415
- 9.4** — Alternative details of wood-concrete interface 416
- 9.5** — External post-tensioning system 418
- 9.6** — Internal post-tensioning system 418
- 9.7** — Protection for external post-tensioning system 423
- 10.1** — Class 1 and 2 sections in positive moment regions 465
- 10.2** — Class 1 and 2 sections in negative moment regions 466
- 10.3** — Class 3 Sections in positive moment regions 468
- 10.4** — Class 3 Sections in negative moment regions 469
- 10.5** — Detailing requirements for orthotropic decks 487
- 10.6** — Detail categories for load-induced fatigue 494
- 11.1** — Maximum average pressure on a layer of elastomeric bearing at SLS without rotation 548
- 12.1** — Application of traffic design loads to traffic barriers 562
- 12.2** — Application of pedestrian and bicycle design loads to barriers 563
- 14.1** — Level 1 evaluation loads with CL1-W Truck 653
- 14.2** — Level 2 evaluation loads with CL2-W Truck 654
- 14.3** — Level 3 evaluation loads with CL3-W Truck 655
- 14.4** — Deck punching shear for composite slabs 667
- 14.5** — Deck punching shear for non-composite slabs 668
- 14.6** — Spacing requirements for minimum reinforcement, mm 670
- 14.7** — Spacing requirements for minimum reinforcement as a fraction of shear depth 671
- 14.8** — Posting loads for gross vehicle weight 678

- 16.1** — Distance between the deck slab and the top of the supporting beam 707
- 16.2** — Detail of transverse edge stiffening 707
- 16.3** — Detail of transverse edge stiffening 708
- 16.4** — Detail of transverse edge stiffening 708
- 16.5** — Detail of transverse edge stiffening 709
- 16.6** — External transverse restraining system consisting of connected straps 709
- 16.7** — External transverse confining system consisting of indirectly connected partially studded straps 710
- 16.8** — External transverse confining system in longitudinal negative moment regions 710
- 16.9** — Post-tensioning system for stressed log bridges 716
- 16.10** — Spliced butt joint for logs 717
- 16.11** — Cross-section of a barrier wall reinforced with GFRP 719
- 16.12** — Anchorage methods in the compression zone of externally bonded FRP shear reinforcement 723
- 16.13** — Cross-section of a timber beam with GFRP NSMR 726
- 16.14** — Elevation of timber beam with GFRP sheets for shear strengthening 727
- 16.15** — Elevation of timber beam with GFRP bars for shear strengthening 728





# ***Technical Committee on the Canadian Highway Bridge Design Code (CAN/CSA-S6-06)***

**Note:** This list reflects the Technical Committee membership when CAN/CSA-S6-06 was formally approved.

<b>J. Francis</b>	Nova Scotia Department of Transportation and Public Works, Halifax, Nova Scotia	<i>Chair</i>
<b>B. Bakht</b>	JMBT Structures Research Inc., Toronto, Ontario	<i>Vice-Chair</i>
<b>G. Richard</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	<i>Vice-Chair</i>
<b>T.B. Tharmabala</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	<i>Vice-Chair</i>
<b>H. Yea</b>	Saskatchewan Highways and Transportation, Regina, Saskatchewan	<i>Vice-Chair</i>
<b>A.C. Agarwal</b>	Brampton, Ontario	
<b>W.V. Anderson</b>	Delcan Corporation, Markham, Ontario	
<b>D. Bagnariol</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	<i>Associate</i>
<b>N. Banthia</b>	University of British Columbia, Vancouver, British Columbia	<i>Associate</i>
<b>F.M. Bartlett</b>	University of Western Ontario, London, Ontario	
<b>D. Beaulieu</b>	Centre de recherche industrielle du Québec, Ste-Foy, Québec	
<b>G.P. Carlin</b>	Les Ponts Jacques Cartier et Champlain Incorporée, Longueuil, Québec	<i>Associate</i>
<b>M.S. Cheung</b>	University of Ottawa, Ottawa, Ontario	
<b>C. Clarke</b>	Alberta Infrastructure and Transportation, Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>D. Cogswell</b>	New Brunswick Department of Transportation, Fredericton, New Brunswick	<i>Associate</i>

<b>D. Dundas</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, Toronto, Ontario	<i>Associate</i>
<b>D.J. Evans</b>	Prince Edward Island Department of Transportation and Public Works, Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island	
<b>P. Gauvreau</b>	University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario	<i>Associate</i>
<b>A. Ho</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, Toronto, Ontario	
<b>K.C. Johns</b>	Université de Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke, Québec	
<b>C. Lam</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>P. Lepper</b>	Canadian Wood Council, Ottawa, Ontario	
<b>D. Macleod</b>	Public Works and Government Services Canada, Gatineau, Québec	
<b>B. Massicotte</b>	École Polytechnique de Montréal, Montréal, Québec	
<b>R. Mathieson</b>	British Columbia Ministry of Transportation, Victoria, British Columbia	
<b>R.J. McGrath</b>	Cement Association of Canada, Ottawa, Ontario	
<b>D. Mitchell</b>	McGill University, Montréal, Québec	
<b>A.A. Mufti</b>	University of Manitoba, Winnipeg, Manitoba	
<b>A. Nelson</b>	Manitoba Department of Highways and Transportation, Winnipeg, Manitoba	
<b>R.J. Ramsay</b>	UMA Engineering Limited, Edmonton, Alberta	<i>Associate</i>
<b>J.A. Skeet</b>	Dillon Consulting Limited, Calgary, Alberta	<i>Associate</i>
<b>A.F. Wong</b>	Canadian Institute of Steel Construction, Toronto, Ontario	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# △ **Technical Committee on the Canadian Highway Bridge Design Code (CSA S6S1-10)**

**Note:** This list reflects the Technical Committee membership when CSA S6S1-10 was formally approved.

<b>H. Yea</b>	Saskatchewan Highways and Infrastructure, Regina, Saskatchewan	<i>Chair</i>
<b>B. Bakht</b>	JMBT Structures Research Inc., Toronto, Ontario	<i>Vice-Chair</i>
<b>G. Desgagné</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	<i>Vice-Chair</i>
<b>D.J. Evans</b>	Prince Edward Island Department of Transportation and Infrastructure Renewal, Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island	<i>Vice-Chair</i>
<b>T.B. Tharmabala</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	<i>Vice-Chair</i>
<b>A.C. Agarwal</b>	Brampton, Ontario	
<b>W.V. Anderson</b>	Delcan Corporation, Markham, Ontario	
<b>L. Atkin</b>	Alberta Transportation, Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>D. Bagnariol</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	<i>Associate</i>
<b>N. Banthia</b>	University of British Columbia, Vancouver, British Columbia	<i>Associate</i>
<b>F.M. Bartlett</b>	University of Western Ontario, London, Ontario	
<b>D. Beaulieu</b>	Université Laval, Québec, Québec	
<b>M.S. Cheung</b>	University of Ottawa, Ottawa, Ontario	
<b>D. Cogswell</b>	New Brunswick Department of Transportation, Fredericton, New Brunswick	<i>Associate</i>
<b>D. Dundas</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, Toronto, Ontario	<i>Associate</i>

<b>P. Gauvreau</b>	University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario	<i>Associate</i>
<b>G. Grondin</b>	University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta	<i>Associate</i>
<b>A. Ho</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, Toronto, Ontario	
<b>K.C. Johns</b>	Université de Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke, Québec	
<b>C. Lam</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>P. Lepper</b>	Canadian Wood Council, Ottawa, Ontario	
<b>B. Massicotte</b>	École Polytechnique de Montréal, Montréal, Québec	
<b>R. Mathieson</b>	British Columbia Ministry of Transportation and Infrastructure, Victoria, British Columbia	
<b>R.J. McGrath</b>	Cement Association of Canada, Ottawa, Ontario	
<b>D. Mitchell</b>	McGill University, Montréal, Québec	
<b>A.A. Mufti</b>	University of Manitoba, Winnipeg, Manitoba	
<b>R.J. Ramsay</b>	AECOM, Edmonton, Alberta	<i>Associate</i>
<b>G. Richard</b>	Dessau Inc., Québec, Québec	
<b>J. Saweczko</b>	Byrne Engineering Inc., Burlington, Ontario	
<b>J.A. Skeet</b>	Dillon Consulting Limited, Calgary, Alberta	<i>Associate</i>
<b>A.F. Wong</b>	Canadian Institute of Steel Construction, Toronto, Ontario	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***Subcommittee on Section 1 — General***

<b>A. Ho</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, Toronto, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>J. Doering</b>	University of Manitoba, Winnipeg, Manitoba	
<b>H. Farghaly</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>R. Haynes</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>R. Richardson</b>	Manitoba Department of Highways and Transportation, Winnipeg, Manitoba	
<b>D.M. Tran</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>R. Walters</b>	Stantec Consulting Limited, Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>E. Waschuk</b>	Alberta Infrastructure and Transportation, Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***Subcommittee on Section 2 — Durability***

<b>N. Banthia</b>	University of British Columbia, Vancouver, British Columbia	<i>Chair</i>
<b>G.E. Bruderemann</b>	Frido Consulting, Halfmoon Bay, British Columbia	
<b>P.D. Carter</b>	CH2M HILL Canada, Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>D. Conte</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, Toronto, Ontario	
<b>O.E. Gjorv</b>	Norwegian University of Science and Technology, Trondheim, Norway	
<b>J. Kroman</b>	City of Calgary, Calgary, Alberta	
<b>Z. Lounis</b>	National Research Council Canada, Ottawa, Ontario	
<b>P. McGrath</b>	McGrath Engineering Ltd., North Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>S. Mindess</b>	University of British Columbia, Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>K. Sakai</b>	Kagawa University, Takamatsu, Japan	
<b>G. Tadros</b>	STECO Engineering Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***Subcommittee on Section 3 — Loads (CAN/CSA-S6-06)***

**Note:** This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CAN/CSA-S6-06 was formally approved.

<b>A.C. Agarwal</b>	Brampton, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>A. Au</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>D.P. Gagnon</b>	Buckland & Taylor Ltd., North Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>J.P. Grenier</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>P. King</b>	University of Western Ontario, London, Ontario	
<b>C. Lam</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>D. Mitchell</b>	McGill University, Montréal, Québec	
<b>R.H. Pion</b>	Public Works and Government Services Canada, Gatineau, Québec	
<b>G. Van Der Vinne</b>	Northwest Hydraulic Consultants Ltd., Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>



# △ Subcommittee on Section 3 — Loads (CSA S6S1-10)

**Note:** This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CSA S6S1-10 was formally approved.

<b>A.C. Agarwal</b>	Brampton, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>A. Au</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	<i>Secretary</i>
<b>D.P. Gagnon</b>	Buckland & Taylor Ltd., North Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>J.P. Grenier</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>P. King</b>	University of Western Ontario, London, Ontario	
<b>C. Lam</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>D. Mitchell</b>	McGill University, Montréal, Québec	
<b>G. Van Der Vinne</b>	Northwest Hydraulic Consultants Ltd., Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***Subcommittee on Section 4 — Seismic design (CAN/CSA-S6-06)***

**Note:** This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CAN/CSA-S6-06 was formally approved.

<b>D. Mitchell</b>	McGill University, Montréal, Québec	<i>Chair</i>
<b>U.D. Atukorala</b>	Golder Associates Ltd., Burnaby, British Columbia	
<b>D. Bagnariol</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>M. Bruneau</b>	University at Buffalo, Buffalo, New York, USA	
<b>A. Heidebrecht</b>	McMaster University, Hamilton, Ontario	
<b>D. Kennedy</b>	Associated Engineering Ltd., Burnaby, British Columbia	
<b>N. Theodor</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>R. Tremblay</b>	École Polytechnique de Montréal, Montréal, Québec	
<b>S. Zhu</b>	Buckland & Taylor Ltd., North Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# △ Subcommittee on Section 4 — Seismic design (CSA S6S1-10)

**Note:** This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CSA S6S1-10 was formally approved.

<b>D. Mitchell</b>	McGill University, Montréal, Québec	<i>Chair</i>
<b>U.D. Atukorala</b>	Golder Associates Ltd., Burnaby, British Columbia	
<b>D. Bagnariol</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>M. Bruneau</b>	University at Buffalo, Buffalo, New York, USA	
<b>A. Heidebrecht</b>	McMaster University, Hamilton, Ontario	
<b>D. Kennedy</b>	Associated Engineering Ltd., Burnaby, British Columbia	
<b>N. Theodor</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>R. Tremblay</b>	École Polytechnique de Montréal, Montréal, Québec	
<b>S. Zhu</b>	Buckland & Taylor Ltd., North Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***Subcommittee on Section 5 — Methods of analysis (CAN/CSA-S6-06)***

**Note:** This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CAN/CSA-S6-06 was formally approved.

<b>B. Massicotte</b>	École Polytechnique de Montréal, Montréal, Québec	<i>Chair</i>
<b>J. Au</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>T. Chicoine</b>	SNC-Lavalin Inc., Montréal, Québec	
<b>J.P. Grenier</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>J. Newhook</b>	Dalhousie University, Halifax, Nova Scotia	
<b>S. Sabanathan</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>M. Talbot</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# △ **Subcommittee on Section 5 — Methods of analysis (CSA S6S1-10)**

**Note:** This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CSA S6S1-10 was formally approved.

<b>B. Massicotte</b>	École Polytechnique de Montréal, Montréal, Québec	<i>Chair</i>
<b>J. Au</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>T. Chicoine</b>	Buckland & Taylor Ltd., North Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>J.P. Grenier</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>R. Hasan</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>M. Talbot</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***Subcommittee on Section 6 — Foundations (CAN/CSA-S6-06)***

**Note:** *This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CAN/CSA-S6-06 was formally approved.*

<b>D. Dundas</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, Toronto, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>A. Altaee</b>	Urkada Technology, Ottawa, Ontario	
<b>U.D. Atukorala</b>	Golder Associates Ltd., Burnaby, British Columbia	
<b>P. Branco</b>	Thurber Engineering Limited, Oakville, Ontario	
<b>G. Fenton</b>	Dalhousie University, Halifax, Nova Scotia	
<b>R. Green</b>	Waterloo, Ontario	
<b>I. Husain</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>I. Leclerc</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>P. Ojala</b>	Lea Consulting Limited, Markham, Ontario	
<b>D. Woeller</b>	ConeTec Investigations Ltd., Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# △ Subcommittee on Section 6 — Foundations (CSA S6S1-10)

**Note:** This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CSA S6S1-10 was formally approved.

<b>D. Dundas</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, Toronto, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>A. Altaee</b>	Urkkada Technology, Ottawa, Ontario	
<b>U.D. Atukorala</b>	Golder Associates Ltd., Burnaby, British Columbia	
<b>P. Branco</b>	Thurber Engineering Limited, Oakville, Ontario	
<b>G. Fenton</b>	Dalhousie University, Halifax, Nova Scotia	
<b>R. Green</b>	Waterloo, Ontario	
<b>I. Husain</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>I. Leclerc</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>P. Ojala</b>	Lea Consulting Limited, Markham, Ontario	
<b>D. Woeller</b>	ConeTec Investigations Ltd., Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***Subcommittee on Section 7 — Buried structures***

<b>B. Bakht</b>	JMBT Structures Research Inc., Toronto, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>G. Abdel-Sayed</b>	Bloomfield Hills, Michigan, USA	
<b>J. Au</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>K. Bontius</b>	Hatch, Mott & MacDonald, Mississauga, Ontario	
<b>W. Brockbank</b>	Reinforced Earth Company Ltd., Mississauga, Ontario	
<b>M. Gergely</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>W. Kenedi</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>E. Kling</b>	Centennial Concrete Pipe & Products Inc., Cambridge, Ontario	
<b>I. Leclerc</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>J. Meyboom</b>	Delcan Corporation, New Westminster, British Columbia	
<b>C. Mirza</b>	Toronto, Ontario	
<b>I. Moore</b>	Queen's University, Kingston, Ontario	
<b>T. Morrison</b>	Atlantic Industries Limited, Cambridge, Ontario	
<b>J. Newhook</b>	Dalhousie University, Halifax, Nova Scotia	
<b>P. Sheehan</b>	Armtec Limited Partnership, Guelph, Ontario	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>



# ***Subcommittee on Section 8 — Concrete structures (CAN/CSA-S6-06)***

**Note:** *This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CAN/CSA-S6-06 was formally approved.*

<b>P. Gauvreau</b>	University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>D. Bernard</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>M.P. Collins</b>	University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario	
<b>H. Ibrahim</b>	Buckland & Taylor Ltd., North Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>W. Leblanc</b>	Con-Force Structures Limited, Calgary, Alberta	
<b>R.J. McGrath</b>	Cement Association of Canada, Ottawa, Ontario	
<b>M. Meleka</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>D.M. Rogowsky</b>	UMA Engineering Ltd., Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>R. Stofco</b>	McCormick Rankin Corporation, Mississauga, Ontario	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# △ **Subcommittee on Section 8 — Concrete structures (CSA S6S1-10)**

**Note:** This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CSA S6S1-10 was formally approved.

<b>P. Gauvreau</b>	University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>D. Bernard</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>M.P. Collins</b>	University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario	
<b>S. Goulet</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>H. Ibrahim</b>	Buckland & Taylor Ltd., North Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>W. Leblanc</b>	Con-Force Structures Limited, Calgary, Alberta	
<b>R.J. McGrath</b>	Cement Association of Canada, Ottawa, Ontario	
<b>M. Meleka</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>D.M. Rogowsky</b>	UMA Engineering Ltd., Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>R. Stofco</b>	McCormick Rankin Corporation, Mississauga, Ontario	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***Subcommittee on Section 9 — Wood structures***

<b>K.C. Johns</b>	Université de Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke, Québec	<i>Chair</i>
<b>B. Bakht</b>	JMBT Structures Research Inc., Toronto, Ontario	
<b>L.M. Bélanger</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>R.M.G. Britton</b>	University of Manitoba, Winnipeg, Manitoba	
<b>G.E. Brudermann</b>	Frido Consulting, Halfmoon Bay, British Columbia	
<b>R.J. Eden</b>	Manitoba Floodway Authority, Winnipeg, Manitoba	
<b>M. Erki</b>	Royal Military College of Canada, Kingston, Ontario	
<b>R.O. Foschi</b>	University of British Columbia, Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>R. Krisciunas</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, Thunder Bay, Ontario	
<b>P. Lepper</b>	Canadian Wood Council, Ottawa, Ontario	
<b>I. Sturrock</b>	British Columbia Ministry of Transportation, Victoria, British Columbia	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***Subcommittee on Section 10 — Steel structures (CAN/CSA-S6-06)***

**Note:** This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CAN/CSA-S6-06 was formally approved.

<b>D. Beaulieu</b>	Centre de recherche industrielle du Québec, Ste-Foy, Québec	<i>Chair</i>
<b>D. Francis</b>	Supreme Steel Ltd., Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>G. Grondin</b>	University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>H. Hawk</b>	Delcan Corporation, Calgary, Alberta	
<b>J. Labbé</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>N. Theodor</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>R. Vincent</b>	Canam Group Inc., Boucherville, Québec	
<b>A.F. Wong</b>	Canadian Institute of Steel Construction, Toronto, Ontario	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# △ **Subcommittee on Section 10 — Steel structures (CSA S6S1-10)**

**Note:** This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CSA S6S1-10 was formally approved.

<b>G. Grondin</b>	University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta	<i>Chair</i>
<b>R. Vincent</b>	Canam Group Inc., Boucherville, Québec	<i>Vice-Chair</i>
<b>H. Hawk</b>	Delcan Corporation, Calgary, Alberta	
<b>P. King</b>	Rapid-Span Structures, Armstrong, British Columbia	
<b>J. Labbé</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>N. Theodor</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>E. Whalen</b>	Canadian Institute of Steel Construction, Markham, Ontario	
<b>A.F. Wong</b>	Canadian Institute of Steel Construction, Markham, Ontario	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***Subcommittee on Section 11 — Joints and bearings***

<b>J.A. Skeet</b>	Dillon Consulting Limited, Calgary, Alberta	<i>Chair</i>
<b>J. Labbé</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>R. Mihaljevic</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>N. Patel</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>J.F. Reysset</b>	Goodco Ltée, Laval, Québec	
<b>R. Yu</b>	Alberta Infrastructure and Transportation, Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***Subcommittee on Section 12 — Barriers and highway accessory supports***

<b>R.J. Ramsay</b>	UMA Engineering Limited, Edmonton, Alberta	<i>Chair</i>
<b>D. Beaulieu</b>	Centre de recherche industrielle du Québec, Ste-Foy, Québec	
<b>M. Blouin</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>R. Haynes</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>M. Vallières</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>R. Yu</b>	Alberta Infrastructure and Transportation, Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***Subcommittee on Section 13 — Movable bridges***

<b>T.B. Tharmabala</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>D. Campbell</b>	Klohn-Krippen Consultants Ltd., Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>R. Clayton</b>	Byrne Engineering Inc., Burlington, Ontario	
<b>J. Crabb</b>	Delcan Corporation, Markham, Ontario	
<b>D. Dixon</b>	McCormick Rankin Corporation, Mississauga, Ontario	
<b>L. Huang</b>	Modjeski and Masters, Mechanicsburg, Pennsylvania, USA	
<b>Q. Islam</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, Kingston, Ontario	
<b>W. McCracken</b>	Byrne Engineering Inc., Burlington, Ontario	
<b>J. Saweczko</b>	Byrne Engineering Inc., Burlington, Ontario	
<b>P.M. Skelton</b>	Hardesty & Hanover, New York, New York, USA	
<b>A. Zaki</b>	SNC-Lavalin Inc., Montréal, Québec	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>



# ***Subcommittee on Section 14 — Evaluation (CAN/CSA-S6-06)***

**Note:** This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CAN/CSA-S6-06 was formally approved.

<b>D. Bagnariol</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>F.M. Bartlett</b>	University of Western Ontario, London, Ontario	
<b>D.P. Gagnon</b>	Buckland & Taylor Ltd., North Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>J.P. Grenier</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>B. Higgins</b>	CBCL Limited, Halifax, Nova Scotia	
<b>W. Kenedi</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>C. Lam</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>J. Meyboom</b>	Delcan Corporation, New Westminster, British Columbia	
<b>P. Ojala</b>	Lea Consulting Limited, Markham, Ontario	
<b>R.J. Ramsay</b>	UMA Engineering Limited, Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# △ Subcommittee on Section 14 — Evaluation (CSA S6S1-10)

**Note:** This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CSA S6S1-10 was formally approved.

<b>D. Bagnariol</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>F.M. Bartlett</b>	University of Western Ontario, London, Ontario	
<b>D.P. Gagnon</b>	Buckland & Taylor Ltd., North Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>J.P. Grenier</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>B. Higgins</b>	CBCL Limited, Halifax, Nova Scotia	
<b>W. Kenedi</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>C. Lam</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>R.J. Ramsay</b>	AECOM, Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***Subcommittee on Section 15 — Rehabilitation and repair***

<b>F.M. Bartlett</b>	University of Western Ontario, London, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>D. Dixon</b>	McCormick Rankin Corporation, Mississauga, Ontario	
<b>L. Feldman</b>	University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon, Saskatchewan	
<b>D.P. Gagnon</b>	Buckland & Taylor Ltd., North Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>D. Lai</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>K.W. Neale</b>	Université de Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke, Québec	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***Subcommittee on Section 16 — Fibre-reinforced structures (CAN/CSA-S6-06)***

**Note:** This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CAN/CSA-S6-06 was formally approved.

<b>A.A. Mufti</b>	University of Manitoba, Winnipeg, Manitoba	<i>Chair</i>
<b>B. Bakht</b>	JMBT Structures Research Inc., Toronto, Ontario	
<b>N. Banthia</b>	University of British Columbia, Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>B. Benmokrane</b>	Université de Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke, Québec	
<b>G. Desgagné</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>R.J. Eden</b>	Manitoba Floodway Authority, Winnipeg, Manitoba	
<b>M. Erki</b>	Royal Military College of Canada, Kingston, Ontario	
<b>V. Karbhari</b>	University of California at San Diego, La Jolla, California, USA	
<b>J. Kroman</b>	City of Calgary, Calgary, Alberta	
<b>D. Lai</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>A. Machida</b>	Saitama University, Urawa, Japan	
<b>K.W. Neale</b>	Université de Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke, Québec	
<b>G. Tadros</b>	STECO Engineering Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
<b>B. Taljsten</b>	BYG-DTU, Lyngby, Denmark	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# △ Subcommittee on Section 16 — Fibre-reinforced structures (CSA S6S1-10)

**Note:** This list reflects the Subcommittee membership when CSA S6S1-10 was formally approved.

<b>A.A. Mufti</b>	University of Manitoba, Winnipeg, Manitoba	<i>Chair</i>
<b>B. Bakht</b>	JMBT Structures Research Inc., Toronto, Ontario	<i>Secretary</i>
<b>N. Banthia</b>	University of British Columbia, Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>B. Benmokrane</b>	Université de Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke, Québec	
<b>G. Desgagné</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>R.J. Eden</b>	Manitoba Floodway Authority, Winnipeg, Manitoba	
<b>M. Erki</b>	Royal Military College of Canada, Kingston, Ontario	
<b>V. Karbhari</b>	University of California at San Diego, La Jolla, California, USA	
<b>J. Kroman</b>	City of Calgary, Calgary, Alberta	
<b>D. Lai</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>A. Machida</b>	Saitama University, Urawa, Japan	
<b>K.W. Neale</b>	Université de Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke, Québec	
<b>J. Newhook</b>	Dalhousie University, Halifax, Nova Scotia	
<b>S. Shamim</b>	University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario	
<b>G. Tadros</b>	STECO Engineering Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	

**B. Taljsten**

BYG-DTU,  
Lyngby, Denmark

**M. Braiter**

CSA,  
Mississauga, Ontario

*Project Manager*

# **Code Calibration Task Force (CAN/CSA-S6-06)**

**Note:** This list reflects the Code Calibration Task Force membership when CAN/CSA-S6-06 was formally approved.

<b>A.C. Agarwal</b>	Brampton, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>A. Au</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>D. Becker</b>	Golder Associates Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
<b>R.O. Foschi</b>	University of British Columbia, Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>D.P. Gagnon</b>	Buckland & Taylor Ltd., North Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>H. Hong</b>	University of Western Ontario, London, Ontario	
<b>P. King</b>	University of Western Ontario, London, Ontario	
<b>C. Lam</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>D. Mitchell</b>	McGill University, Montréal, Québec	
<b>A.S. Nowak</b>	University of Nebraska, Lincoln, Nebraska, USA	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# △ **Code Calibration Task Force** **(CSA S6S1-10)**

**Note:** This list reflects the Code Calibration Task Force membership when CSA S6S1-10 was formally approved.

<b>A.C. Agarwal</b>	Brampton, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>A. Au</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	<i>Secretary</i>
<b>D. Becker</b>	Golder Associates Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
<b>D.P. Gagnon</b>	Buckland & Taylor Ltd., North Vancouver, British Columbia	
<b>H. Hong</b>	University of Western Ontario, London, Ontario	
<b>P. King</b>	University of Western Ontario, London, Ontario	
<b>C. Lam</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	
<b>D. Mitchell</b>	McGill University, Montréal, Québec	
<b>A.S. Nowak</b>	University of Nebraska, Lincoln, Nebraska, USA	
<b>I. Smith</b>	University of New Brunswick, Fredericton, New Brunswick	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>



# ***Editorial Task Force***

<b>M. Erki</b>	Royal Military College of Canada, Kingston, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>B. Bakht</b>	JMBT Structures Research Inc., Toronto, Ontario	
<b>L.G. Jaeger</b>	Halifax, Nova Scotia	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***French Translation Task Force (CAN/CSA-S6-06)***

**Note:** This list reflects the French Translation Task Force membership when CAN/CSA-S6-06 was formally approved.

<b>G. Desgagné</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	<i>Chair</i>
<b>L.M. Bélanger</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>D. Bernard</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>M. Blouin</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>J.P. Grenier</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>J. Labbé</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>M. Lacroix</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>J. Prévost</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>M. Savard</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>M. Vallières</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# Δ **French Translation Task Force** **(CSA S6S1-10)**

**Note:** This list reflects the French Translation Task Force membership when CSA S6S1-10 was formally approved.

<b>G. Desgagné</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	<i>Chair</i>
<b>L.M. Bélanger</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>D. Bernard</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>M. Blouin</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>D. Boulet</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>J.P. Grenier</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>J. Labbé</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>M. Lacroix</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>J. Prévost</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>M. Savard</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>M. Talbot</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>M. Vallières</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# ***Regulatory Authority Committee (CAN/CSA-S6-06)***

**Note:** This list reflects the Regulatory Authority Committee membership when CAN/CSA-S6-06 was formally approved.

<b>G. Richard</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	<i>Chair</i>
<b>J. Francis</b>	Nova Scotia Department of Transportation and Public Works, Halifax, Nova Scotia	<i>Vice-Chair</i>
<b>T.B. Tharmabala</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	<i>Vice-Chair</i>
<b>B. Bakht</b>	JMBT Structures Research Inc., Toronto, Ontario	<i>Associate</i>
<b>G.P. Carlin</b>	Les Ponts Jacques Cartier et Champlain Incorporée, Longueuil, Québec	
<b>C. Clarke</b>	Alberta Infrastructure and Transportation, Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>D. Cogswell</b>	New Brunswick Department of Transportation, Fredericton, New Brunswick	
<b>D.J. Evans</b>	Prince Edward Island Department of Transportation and Public Works, Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island	
<b>A. Ikpong</b>	Yukon Department of Highways and Public Works, Whitehorse, Yukon	
<b>D. Macleod</b>	Public Works and Government Services Canada, Gatineau, Québec	
<b>R. Mathieson</b>	British Columbia Ministry of Transportation, Victoria, British Columbia	
<b>D. Power</b>	Newfoundland and Labrador Department of Transportation and Works, St. John's, Newfoundland and Labrador	
<b>R. Richardson</b>	Manitoba Department of Highways and Transportation, Winnipeg, Manitoba	
<b>D.R. Sitland</b>	Government of Nunavut, Iqaluit, Nunavut	
<b>T. Williams</b>	Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, Northwest Territories	

**H. Yea**

Saskatchewan Highways and Transportation,  
Regina, Saskatchewan

**M. Braiter**

CSA,  
Mississauga, Ontario

*Project Manager*

# △ **Regulatory Authority Committee** **(CSA S6S1-10)**

**Note:** This list reflects the Regulatory Authority Committee membership when CSA S6S1-10 was formally approved.

<b>T.B. Tharmabala</b>	Ontario Ministry of Transportation, St. Catharines, Ontario	<i>Chair</i>
<b>G. Desgagné</b>	Ministère des transports du Québec, Québec, Québec	<i>Vice-Chair</i>
<b>R. Mathieson</b>	British Columbia Ministry of Transportation and Infrastructure, Victoria, British Columbia	<i>Vice-Chair</i>
<b>L. Atkin</b>	Alberta Transportation, Edmonton, Alberta	
<b>D. Cogswell</b>	New Brunswick Department of Transportation, Fredericton, New Brunswick	
<b>R. Eden</b>	Manitoba Department of Infrastructure and Transportation, Winnipeg, Manitoba	
<b>S. Eisan</b>	Nova Scotia Department of Transportation and Infrastructure Renewal, Halifax, Nova Scotia	
<b>D.J. Evans</b>	Prince Edward Island Department of Transportation and Infrastructure Renewal, Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island	
<b>G. Hewas</b>	The Federal Bridge Corporation, Ottawa, Ontario	
<b>A. Ikpong</b>	Yukon Department of Highways and Public Works, Whitehorse, Yukon	
<b>A. Lanteigne</b>	Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, Northwest Territories	
<b>D. Power</b>	Newfoundland and Labrador Department of Transportation and Works, St. John's, Newfoundland and Labrador	
<b>H. Yea</b>	Saskatchewan Highways and Transportation, Regina, Saskatchewan	
<b>M. Braiter</b>	CSA, Mississauga, Ontario	<i>Project Manager</i>

# Preface

This is the tenth edition of CAN/CSA-S6, *Canadian Highway Bridge Design Code*. It supersedes the previous edition published in 2000, which amalgamated and superseded CAN/CSA-S6-88, *Design of Highway Bridges*, and the Ontario Ministry of Transportation's OHBDC-91-01, *Ontario Highway Bridge Design Code*, 3rd ed. Earlier editions of the CSA Standard were published in 1978, 1974, 1966, 1952, 1938, 1929, and 1922. Earlier editions of the *Ontario Highway Bridge Design Code* were published in 1983 and 1979 by the Ontario Ministry of Transportation.

This Code uses the limit states design approach and reflects current design conditions across Canada as well as research activity since the publication of the previous edition. Several design aspects are addressed for the first time in this edition and a more detailed treatment of many areas is provided. This Code has been written to be applicable in all provinces and territories.

As in the previous edition, there are 16 Sections in this Code.

Section 1 ("General") specifies general requirements and includes definitions and a reference publications clause applicable throughout this Code. It also specifies geometric requirements, based in part on the Transportation Association of Canada's *Geometric Design Guide for Canadian Roads* (1999), and hydraulic design requirements, based in part on the Transportation Association of Canada's *Guide to Bridge Hydraulics*, 2nd ed. (2001). There are also provisions covering durability, economics, environmental considerations, aesthetics, safety, maintenance, and maintenance inspection access.

Section 2 ("Durability") addresses durability aspects of materials used in the construction of highway bridges, culverts, and other structures located in transportation corridors. The durability requirements for all of the materials are based on common principles applicable to the deterioration mechanisms for each material, the environmental conditions to which the materials are subjected, and the protective measures and detailing requirements needed to limit deterioration to acceptable levels.

Section 3 ("Loads") specifies loading requirements for the design of new bridges, including requirements for permanent loads, live loads, and miscellaneous transitory and exceptional loads (but excluding seismic loads). The 625 kN truck load model and corresponding lane load model are specified as the minima for interprovincial transportation and are based on current Canadian legal loads. Ship collision provisions are also included in Section 3.

Section 3 no longer specifies limits on the span lengths for application of the truck and lane loads. Accordingly, long-span requirements have been developed and appear in Section 3 and elsewhere in this Code (these requirements, however, should not be considered comprehensive). Section 3 covers long-span live loading and addresses wind tunnel testing for aerodynamic effects.

Section 4 ("Seismic design") specifies seismic design requirements for new bridges. These are based primarily on AASHTO (American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials) LRFDEM-3-M, *AASHTO LRF Bridge Design Specifications*, 3rd ed. (2005). Section 4 differs from AASHTO LRFDEM-3-M, however, by providing a more extensive treatment of the importance and response modification factors, new design and detailing requirements for structural steel ductile substructure elements, and design provisions for seismic base isolation. Section 4 also includes design provisions for the seismic evaluation of existing bridges and provisions pertaining to the seismic rehabilitation of existing bridges.

Section 5 ("Methods of analysis") specifies requirements for analyzing the basic superstructure of a bridge. In its methods for simplified analysis of bridge superstructures, a bridge is treated as a single beam and force effects are averaged over the width of the bridge and subsequently amplified to calculate the true intensity. Distribution factors are based on research conducted up to the late 1990s. Simplified elastic methods are included for the analysis of transverse effects. Refined methods of analysis for short-, medium-, and long-span bridges are also addressed.

Section 6 ("Foundations") is based, as in the previous edition, on the use of global resistance factors. Section 6 employs the limit states design approach, in which the term "resistance" is applied to the strength or capacity of the soil or rock at the ultimate limit state and the term "reaction" is associated with the serviceability limit state and is indicative of a particular deformation. Section 6 also emphasizes the importance of communication between the bridge structural engineer and the geotechnical engineer at all stages of a project.

Section 7 (“Buried structures”) deals with soil-metal structures with shallow corrugated plates in which thrust is the dominant force in the metal plates as well as soil-metal structures with deep corrugated plates and metal box structures in which flexural effects are also considered in the design of the metal plates. Provisions have been added for reinforced concrete precast and cast-in-place structures, including pipes, box sections, and segmental structures. Section 7 also specifies requirements for determining the properties and dimensions of the engineered soil and non-soil components and addresses construction supervision and construction procedures for soil components.

Section 8 (“Concrete structures”) covers reinforced and partially and fully prestressed concrete components (including deck slabs) made of normal-density, semi-low-density, and high-density concrete of a strength varying from 30 to 80 MPa. Compression field theory is used for proportioning for shear and for torsion combined with flexure. The strut-and-tie approach is used for proportioning regions where the plane sections assumption is not applicable.

Section 9 (“Wood structures”) specifies properties for materials and fastenings that are consistent with CAN/CSA-O86-01, *Engineering Design in Wood*, and includes data for structural composite lumber. Its provisions related to shear and compression, load distribution, design factors (in many cases), and laminated wood decks are essentially unchanged from those of the previous edition. The shear force concept has been reintroduced for the shear design of sawn wood members and the specified strength values in shear have been increased, in accordance with CAN/CSA-O86-01. In addition, the factors for load-sharing systems have changed.

Section 10 (“Steel structures”) specifies the majority of this Code’s design requirements for steel structures (with the exception of some seismic requirements specified in Section 4). Construction requirements that can have an impact on the resistance factors used in Section 10 are specified in Clause 10.24. Because this Code has been expanded to include long-span bridges, cables and arches are now dealt with. In addition, durability is now addressed much more fully and clauses dealing with beams and girders, composite beams and girders, horizontally curved girders, orthotropic decks, fatigue, and construction have been revised.

Section 11 (“Joints and bearings”) covers the deck joints and bearings most commonly used in Canada.

Section 12 (“Barriers and highway accessory supports”) specifies crash test requirements for barriers and breakaway highway accessory supports. Crash testing may be waived for barrier and accessory support designs that have a successful in-service performance record. Performance levels alternative to those specified in Section 12 are permitted if approved by the regulatory authority.

Section 13 (“Movable bridges”) specifies requirements for the design, construction, and operation of conventional movable bridges. Although the structural design aspects are based on the limit states design approach, the mechanical systems design aspects follow the working stress principle used in North American industry.

Section 14 (“Evaluation”) includes new provisions concerning the three-level evaluation system, evaluation of deck slabs, and detailed evaluation from bridge testing. The provisions on the strength of wood members and the shear resistance of concrete have been improved. Another category of permit vehicle (Permit — Annual or project [PA]) has been added. An optional probability-based mean load method that uses site-specific load and resistance information for more accurate evaluation is also provided. As in the previous edition, a more conventional approach to determining material grades from small samples is used in place of the Baye’s theorem approach in CAN/CSA-S6-88.

Section 15 (“Rehabilitation and repair”) specifies rehabilitation design requirements and provides guidance on the selection of loads and load factors for rehabilitation that is based on the intended use of the bridge following rehabilitation.

Section 16 (“Fibre-reinforced structures”) specifies design requirements for a limited number of structural components containing either high- or low-modulus fibres. The high-modulus fibres (aramid, carbon, and glass) are employed in fibre-reinforced polymers (FRPs), which are used as replacements for steel bars and tendons. The low-modulus fibres are used for controlling cracks in concrete. Section 16 covers concrete beams and slabs, concrete deck slabs, and stressed wood decks. In this edition, Section 16 includes new design provisions that permit glass-fibre-reinforced polymer to be used as primary reinforcement and as tendons in concrete.



Other new provisions in Section 16 permit the rehabilitation of concrete and timber structures using externally bonded FRP systems or near-surface-mounted reinforcement. The provisions concerning fibre-reinforced concrete deck slabs in the previous edition have been reorganized for this edition to include deck slabs of both cast-in-place and precast construction, which are now referred to as “externally restrained deck slabs”, whereas deck slabs containing internal FRP reinforcement are referred to as “internally restrained deck slabs”. The resistance factors of the previous edition have been revised and depend on conditions of use, with a further distinction made between factory- and field-produced FRPs. The previous edition’s deformability requirements for FRP-reinforced and FRP-prestressed concrete beams and slabs are now dealt with in separate clauses that cover design for deformability, minimum flexural resistance, and crack control reinforcement. The effect of the sustained loads on the strength of FRPs is accounted for in this edition by limits on stresses in FRPs induced at the serviceability limit state. In addition, new stress limits for tendons have been introduced. The design for shear is now an adaptation of this Code’s method for concrete structures and accounts for the decrease in shear carried by the concrete in FRP-reinforced beams. There are also modified provisions for barrier walls.

Funding for developing and publishing this Code was provided by the governments of Alberta, British Columbia, Manitoba, New Brunswick, Newfoundland and Labrador, the Northwest Territories, Nova Scotia, Nunavut, Ontario, Prince Edward Island, Québec, Saskatchewan, and Yukon, Public Works and Government Services Canada, and the Federal Bridge Corporation Limited. This Code could not have been developed without the cooperation of all of these sponsors.

This Code was prepared by the Technical Committee on the Canadian Highway Bridge Design Code, under the jurisdiction of the Strategic Steering Committee on Structures (Design), and has been formally approved by the Technical Committee. It has been approved as a National Standard of Canada by the Standards Council of Canada.

November 2006

**Notes:**

- (1) Use of the singular does not exclude the plural (and vice versa) when the sense allows.
- (2) Although the intended primary application of this Code is stated in Clause 1.1.1, it is important to note that it remains the responsibility of the users of the Code to judge its suitability for their particular purpose.
- (3) This publication was developed by consensus, which is defined by CSA Policy governing standardization — Code of good practice for standardization as “substantial agreement. Consensus implies much more than a simple majority, but not necessarily unanimity”. It is consistent with this definition that a member may be included in the Technical Committee list and yet not be in full agreement with all clauses of this publication.
- (4) CSA Codes and Standards are subject to periodic review, and suggestions for their improvement will be referred to the appropriate committee.
- (5) All enquiries regarding this Code, including requests for interpretation, should be addressed to Canadian Standards Association, 5060 Spectrum Way, Suite 100, Mississauga, Ontario, Canada L4W 5N6.  
Requests for interpretation should
  - (a) define the problem, making reference to the specific clause, and, where appropriate, include an illustrative sketch;
  - (b) provide an explanation of circumstances surrounding the actual field condition; and
  - (c) be phrased where possible to permit a specific “yes” or “no” answer.

Committee interpretations are processed in accordance with the CSA Directives and guidelines governing standardization and are published in CSA’s periodical Info Update, which is available on the CSA Web site at [www.csa.ca](http://www.csa.ca).

# Foreword

In Canada, the legal mandate for establishing design and construction requirements for highways, including highway bridges, lies with the provincial and territorial governments. Before the publication of the previous edition of this Code, Ontario regulated the design and construction of highway bridges through the *Ontario Highway Bridge Design Code*. All of the other provinces and territories used CAN/CSA-S6, *Design of Highway Bridges*, with the exception of Manitoba, which adopted the bridge code published by the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO). The previous edition of the *Canadian Highway Bridge Design Code* was developed to provide a state-of-the-art model design code that could be adopted by all provinces and territories. This new edition is intended to serve the same purpose.

Among the benefits associated with undertaking the development of this Code is the opportunity to establish safety and reliability levels for highway bridges that are consistent across all Canadian jurisdictions. Adoption of a single code makes it easier for the consulting and producer industries to respond to calls for proposals and eliminates the need for familiarity with the details of several codes. The adoption of a single code also supports the implementation of a national highway transportation system with agreed minimum standards and loadings for bridges on interprovincial highways, thereby encouraging consistency of vehicle weights across jurisdictions and supporting the objective of more cost-effective transportation of goods.

Designers need to be aware, however, that although this Code establishes CL-625 loading as the minimum for bridges that are part of the national highway system, it is within the mandate of the provinces and territories to adopt a heavier or lighter live loading based on local traffic conditions. For example, Ontario requires (as specified in Annex A3.4) the use of a CL-625-ONT loading in the design of new bridges; this reflects the higher average regulatory and observed loads for trucks operating in the province. All of the requirements of this Code applicable to CL-W loading also apply to CL-625-ONT loading. Designers should always obtain approval from the regulatory authority when a live loading other than the CL-625 loading is to be used for design, and should check whether any variations from the requirements of this Code are in effect in the jurisdiction, e.g., for evaluation of existing bridges or issuance of overload permits.

This Code was developed by taking into account the different regulatory structures and standards of Canada's provinces and territories. Overall priorities and objectives were established by the Regulatory Authority Committee (RAC), which also monitored the progress of the Code's development. In accordance with CSA procedural requirements, however, responsibility for the technical content of this Code was assigned to the Technical Committee (TC), as were decisions on how to deal with the priorities and objectives identified by the RAC. Because of the breadth and complexity of this Code, subcommittees (which were required to operate and report on a consensus basis) were established to oversee each section. In addition, task forces were established to handle specific aspects of this Code. The subcommittees and task forces reported to the TC through their Chairs. The extensive use of subcommittees permitted the recruitment of experts with the knowledge needed to address the sometimes highly specialized subjects covered by this Code.

The developers of this Code wish to acknowledge the contributions of the following individuals, who were unable to complete their terms on the RAC and TC: Ismail Elkholy (RAC and former Vice-Chair of TC) (Manitoba Department of Highways and Transportation) and Peter Lester (RAC and TC) (Newfoundland and Labrador Department of Transportation and Works).

This Code is complemented by CSA S6.1-06, *Commentary on CAN/CSA-S6-06*, Canadian Highway Bridge Design Code, which provides rationale statements and explanatory material for many of the clauses of this Code. Although this Code is being published in both English and French, CSA S6.1 is available only in English.

A 490M-04a  
*Standard Specification for High-Strength Steel Bolts, Classes 10.9 and 10.9.3, for Structural Steel Joints [Metric]*

A 510-03  
*Standard Specification for General Requirements for Wire Rods and Coarse Round Wire, Carbon Steel*

A 586-04a  
*Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Parallel and Helical Steel Wire Structural Strand*

Δ A 588/A 588M-05  
*Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Structural Steel, up to 50 ksi [345 MPa] Minimum Yield Point, with Atmospheric Corrosion Resistance*

A 603-98 (R2003)  
*Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Structural Wire Rope*

A 641/A 641M-03  
*Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire*

A 653/A 653M-05  
*Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process*

A 668/A 668M-04  
*Standard Specification for Steel Forgings, Carbon and Alloy, for General Industrial Use*

A 675/A 675M-03 e1  
*Standard Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon, Hot-Wrought, Special Quality, Mechanical Properties*

A 709/A 709M-05  
*Standard Specification for Carbon and High-Strength Low-Alloy Structural Steel Shapes, Plates, and Bars and Quenched-and-Tempered Alloy Structural Steel Plates for Bridges*

Δ A 722/A 722M-07  
*Standard Specification for Uncoated High-Strength Steel Bars for Prestressing Concrete*

B 22-02  
*Standard Specification for Bronze Castings for Bridges and Turntables*

B 36/B 36M-01  
*Standard Specification for Brass Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Rolled Bar*

B 121/B 121M-01  
*Standard Specification for Leaded Brass Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Rolled Bar*

B 746/B 746M-02  
*Standard Specification for Corrugated Aluminum Alloy Structural Plate for Field-Bolted Pipe, Pipe-Arches, and Arches*

Δ C 78-09  
*Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Concrete (Using Simple Beam with Third-Point Loading)*

C 506M-05  
*Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Arch Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe [Metric]*

C 507M-05  
*Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Elliptical Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe [Metric]*

C 567-05  
*Standard Test Method for Determining Density of Structural Lightweight Concrete*

Δ C 1399-07  
*Standard Test Method for Obtaining Average Residual-Strength of Fiber-Reinforced Concrete*

C 1433-04 e1  
*Standard Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Box Sections for Culverts, Storm Drains, and Sewers [Metric]*

D 395-03  
*Standard Test Methods for Rubber Property — Compression Set*

D 412-98a (2002) e1  
*Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers — Tension*

D 429-03  
*Standard Test Methods for Rubber Property — Adhesion to Rigid Substrates*

D 573-04  
*Standard Test Method for Rubber — Deterioration in an Air Oven*

D 698-00 ae1  
*Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (600 kN-m/m<sup>3</sup>))*

D 746-04  
*Standard Test Method for Brittleness Temperature of Plastics and Elastomers by Impact*

D 1149-99  
*Standard Test Method for Rubber Deterioration-Surface Ozone Cracking in a Chamber*

D 1557-02 e1  
*Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (2,700 kN-m/m<sup>3</sup>))*

D 2239-03  
*Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SIDR-PR) Based on Controlled Inside Diameter*

D 2240-04 e1  
*Standard Test Method for Rubber Property — Durometer Hardness*

D 2487-00  
*Standard Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)*

D 3350-04  
*Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Pipe and Fittings Materials*

D 4541-02  
*Standard Test Method for Pull-Off Strength of Coatings Using Portable Adhesion Testers*

D 4894-04  
*Standard Specification for Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) Granular Molding and Ram Extrusion Materials*

D 5456-05  
*Standard Specification for Evaluation of Structural Composite Lumber Products*

F 436-04  
*Standard Specification for Hardened Steel Washers*

F 568M-04  
*Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Externally Threaded Metric Fasteners*

Δ F 1852-08  
*Standard Specification for "Twist Off" Type Tension Control Structural Bolt/Nut/Washer Assemblies, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength*

Δ F 2280-08  
*Standard Specification for "Twist Off" Type Tension Control Structural Bolt/Nut/Washer Assemblies, Steel, Heat Treated 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength*

PS 62-97 (withdrawn Provisional Standard)  
*Provisional Standard Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Box Sections for Culverts, Storm Drains, and Sewers*

**AWPA (American Wood-Preservers' Association)**

C33-03  
*Standard for Preservative Treatment of Structural Composite Lumber by Pressure Processes*

**Government of Canada**

*Navigable Waters Protection Act, RSC 1985, c. N-22*

**NCHRP (National Cooperative Highway Research Program)**

Report 230 (1980)  
*Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Appurtenances*

Report 350 (1993)  
*Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Features*

**NEMA (National Electrical Manufacturers Association)**

ICS9-1993 (withdrawn Standard)  
*Industrial Control and Systems: Power Circuit Accessories*

**NLGA (National Lumber Grades Authority)**

*Standard Grading Rules for Canadian Lumber (2003)*

**NRCC (National Research Council Canada)**

*National Building Code of Canada, 2005*

*National Fire Code of Canada, 2005*

**Research Council on Structural Connections**

*Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts (2004)*

**Transportation Association of Canada**

*Geometric Design Guide for Canadian Roads (1999)*

*Guide to Bridge Hydraulics, 2nd ed. (2001)*

*Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Canada (1998)*

**UL (Underwriters Laboratories Inc.)**

845 (1995)  
*Standard for Motor Control Centers*

**U.S. Department of Defense**

MIL-S-8660C (1999) (cancelled Specification)  
*Silicone Compound*

## 1.3 Definitions

### 1.3.1 General

The definitions in Clauses 1.3.2 to 1.3.4 apply in this Code.

**Note:** *Additional definitions are found in Sections 2 to 16. In the case of a conflict between a definition in Sections 2 to 16 and a definition in Clauses 1.3.2 to 1.3.4, the definition in Sections 2 to 16 takes precedence.*

### 1.3.2 General administrative definitions

**Note:** *The general administrative terms defined in this Clause are capitalized wherever they are used in this Code in their defined sense.*

**Approval** or **Approved** — approval, or approved, in writing by the Regulatory Authority.

**Checker** — a member or licensee of the Engineering Association who carries out the design check, rehabilitation design check, or evaluation check of a bridge or structure.

**Construction** — the construction, reconstruction, rehabilitation, repair, or demolition of a structure.

**Constructor** —

- (a) a Person that contracts to perform all of the Construction work on a project;
- (b) an Owner that contracts with two or more Persons for such Persons to perform part of the Construction work on a project; or
- (c) an Owner that performs all or part of the Construction work on a project.

**Engineer** — a member or licensee of the Engineering Association who carries out the design, rehabilitation design, or evaluation of a bridge or structure.

**Engineering Association** — an organization authorized by charter to regulate the profession of engineering in a province or territory.

**Owner** — the Person having responsibility for and control of a bridge or structure.

**Person** — an individual, board, commission, partnership, or corporation (including a municipal corporation) and his, her, or its agents, successors, and assignees.

**Plans** — the drawings, documents, and specifications that define a Construction project, form part of the contract documents, or are included in the contract documents by reference; all Approved drawings and descriptions produced by a Constructor for the Construction of a bridge or other structure; and all revisions to the items described in this definition.

**Regulatory Authority** — the federal, provincial, or territorial Minister having governmental jurisdiction and control, his or her nominee, or the local authority to whom this authority is delegated.

### 1.3.3 General technical definitions

**Abutment** — a substructure that supports the end of a superstructure and retains some or all of the bridge approach fill.

**Arterial road** — an arterial road as defined in the Transportation Association of Canada's *Geometric Design Guide for Canadian Roads*.

**Auxiliary component** — a component of a structural system that does not constitute part of the intended load-sharing system. Auxiliary components include expansion joints, approach slabs, railings and barriers, and deck drains.

**Average annual daily traffic** — the total volume of traffic during a year divided by the number of days in the year.

Δ

**Table 3.1**  
**Load factors and load combinations**  
(See Clauses 3.5.1, 3.10.1.1, 3.10.5.2, 3.13, 3.16.3, 4.10.7, 4.10.10.1,  
7.6.3.1.1, 7.7.3.1.1, 9.4.2, and 15.6.2.4.)

Loads	Permanent loads			Transitory loads					Exceptional loads			
	<i>D</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>P</i>	<i>L</i> *	<i>K</i>	<i>W</i>	<i>V</i>	<i>S</i>	<i>EQ</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>A</i>	<i>H</i>
<b>Fatigue limit state</b>												
FLS Combination 1	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Serviceability limit states</b>												
SLS Combination 1	1.00	1.00	1.00	0.90	0.80	0	0	1.00	0	0	0	0
SLS Combination 2†	0	0	0	0.90	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Ultimate limit states‡</b>												
ULS Combination 1	$\alpha_D$	$\alpha_E$	$\alpha_P$	1.70††	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
ULS Combination 2	$\alpha_D$	$\alpha_E$	$\alpha_P$	1.60	1.15	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
ULS Combination 3	$\alpha_D$	$\alpha_E$	$\alpha_P$	1.40	1.00	0.45§	0.45	0	0	0	0	0
ULS Combination 4	$\alpha_D$	$\alpha_E$	$\alpha_P$	0	1.25	1.50§	0	0	0	0	0	0
ULS Combination 5	$\alpha_D$	$\alpha_E$	$\alpha_P$	0	0	0	0	0	1.00	0	0	0
ULS Combination 6**	$\alpha_D$	$\alpha_E$	$\alpha_P$	0	0	0	0	0	0	1.30	0	0
ULS Combination 7	$\alpha_D$	$\alpha_E$	$\alpha_P$	0	0	0.80§	0	0	0	0	1.30	0
ULS Combination 8	$\alpha_D$	$\alpha_E$	$\alpha_P$	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1.00
ULS Combination 9	1.35	$\alpha_E$	$\alpha_P$	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

\*For the construction live load factor, see Clause 3.16.3.

†For superstructure vibration only.

‡For ultimate limit states, the maximum or minimum values of  $\alpha_D$ ,  $\alpha_E$ , and  $\alpha_P$  specified in Table 3.2 shall be used.

§For wind loads determined from wind tunnel tests, the load factors shall be as specified in Clause 3.10.5.2.

\*\*For long spans, it is possible that a combination of ice load *F* and wind load *W* will require investigation.

††Also to be applied to the barrier loads.

**Legend:**

*A* = ice accretion load

*D* = dead load

*E* = loads due to earth pressure and hydrostatic pressure, including surcharges but excluding dead load

*EQ* = earthquake load

*F* = loads due to stream pressure and ice forces or to debris torrents

*H* = collision load arising from highway vehicles or vessels, excluding barrier loads

*K* = all strains, deformations, and displacements and their effects, including the effects of their restraint and the effects of friction or stiffness in bearings. Strains and deformations include strains and deformations due to temperature change and temperature differential, concrete shrinkage, differential shrinkage, and creep, but not elastic strains

*L* = live load (including the dynamic load allowance, when applicable), including barrier loads

*P* = secondary prestress effects

*S* = load due to differential settlement and/or movement of the foundation

*V* = wind load on traffic

*W* = wind load on structure

**Table 3.2**  
**Permanent loads — Maximum and minimum values**  
**of load factors for ULS**

(See Clauses 3.5.1, 3.5.2.1, 4.4.1, 4.4.9.3, and 7.8.7.1 and Table 3.1.)

<b>Dead load</b>	<b>Maximum <math>\alpha_D</math></b>	<b>Minimum <math>\alpha_D</math></b>
Factory-produced components, excluding wood	1.10	0.95
Cast-in-place concrete, wood, and all non-structural components	1.20	0.90
Wearing surfaces, based on nominal or specified thickness	1.50	0.65
Earth fill, negative skin friction on piles	1.25	0.80
Water	1.10	0.90
<b>Dead load in combination with earthquakes</b>	<b>Maximum <math>\alpha_D</math></b>	<b>Minimum <math>\alpha_D</math></b>
All dead loads for ULS Combination 5 (see Table 3.1)	1.25	0.80
<b>Earth pressure and hydrostatic pressure</b>	<b>Maximum <math>\alpha_E</math></b>	<b>Minimum <math>\alpha_E</math></b>
Passive earth pressure, considered as a load*	1.25	0.50
At-rest earth pressure	1.25	0.80
Active earth pressure	1.25	0.80
Backfill pressure	1.25	0.80
Hydrostatic pressure	1.10	0.90
<b>Prestress</b>	<b>Maximum <math>\alpha_P</math></b>	<b>Minimum <math>\alpha_P</math></b>
Secondary prestress effects	1.05	0.95

\*When passive earth pressure is considered as a resistance, it is factored in accordance with Section 6.

## 3.5.2 Permanent loads

### 3.5.2.1 General

Total factored load effects shall include those effects due to all permanent loads acting on the structure.

For ULS loading combinations, the maximum or minimum value specified in Table 3.2 for each load factor shall be used to maximize each total factored load effect. However, it is not normally necessary to consider load factors having different values in different spans.

Except as required by Clause 3.5.2.2, the minimum values for load factors specified in Table 3.2 shall not be used for some loads together with maximum values for other loads when the possibility of these loads having minimum and maximum values simultaneously can safely be excluded.

### 3.5.2.2 Overturning and sliding effects

When the maximum value of  $\alpha_E$  for active pressure is used in calculating overturning for cantilever earth-retaining structures and for horizontal sliding, a value of 1.00 shall be used for  $\alpha_D$ .

In calculating backfill pressures that oppose one another or reduce load effects within a structure, all combinations of maximum and minimum earth pressure load factors shall be considered.

In calculating overturning moments occurring during balanced cantilever construction of segmental concrete bridges, maximum and minimum values of  $\alpha_D$  equal to 1.05 and 1.0, respectively, may be used for the erected segments provided that construction controls are specified to ensure that the difference in weight between any two segments forming a balancing pair does not exceed 5%, and that all differences in weight are corrected before the addition of further segments.



## 3.10 Wind loads

### 3.10.1 General

#### 3.10.1.1 General

Clause 3.10 specifies design wind loads for all highway structures and provides specific requirements for bridge substructures and superstructures. Guidance for determining the tendency toward aeroelastic instability in wind-sensitive bridges is also provided. All wind loads based on the reference wind pressure,  $q$ , shall be treated as equivalent static loads.

Special requirements for wind tunnel testing are specified in Clause 3.10.5, with reference to the determination of specific load factors to replace those specified in Table 3.1 for wind load effects.

Annex A3.2 specifies requirements for wind loads on highway accessory supports, barriers, and slender structural elements, including the effects of vortex shedding.

#### 3.10.1.2 Reference wind pressure

The hourly mean reference wind pressure,  $q$ , shall be as specified in Table A3.1.1 for a return period of

- (a) 100 years for bridge structures with any span 125 m long or longer;
- (b) 50 years for bridge structures with a maximum span shorter than 125 m, luminaire support structures higher than 16 m, and overhead sign structures;
- (c) 25 years for luminaire and traffic signal support structures 16 m high or shorter, and for barriers; and
- (d) 10 years for roadside sign structures where a long life expectancy is not required, or for any of the structures specified in Items (a) to (c) during construction.

If the topography at the structure site can cause funnelling of the wind, the reference wind pressure shall be increased by 20%.

#### 3.10.1.3 Gust effect coefficient

For highway bridges that are not sensitive to wind action (which includes most bridges of spans less than 125 m except those that are cable supported), the gust effect coefficient,  $C_g$ , shall be taken as 2.0.

For slender, lighter structures, e.g., pedestrian bridges, luminaire, sign, and traffic signal supports, barriers, and slender structural elements,  $C_g$  shall be taken as 2.5.

For structures that are sensitive to wind action, the gust factor approach shall not be used and the wind loads shall be determined on the basis of a detailed analysis of dynamic wind action, using an Approved method that includes the effects of buffeting.

#### 3.10.1.4 Wind exposure coefficient

The wind exposure coefficient,  $C_e$ , shall not be less than 1.0 and shall be taken from Table 3.8 or calculated as  $(0.10H)^{0.2}$ , where  $H$  is the height above ground of the top of the superstructure. For luminaire, sign, and traffic signal supports, and for barriers,  $H$  shall be taken to the top of the standard, support, or structure considered. The height above ground shall be measured from the foot of cliffs, hills, or escarpments when the structure is located in uneven terrain, or from the low water level for structures over water.

**Table 3.8**  
**Wind exposure coefficient,  $C_e$**   
 (See Clause 3.10.1.4.)

Height above ground of the top of the superstructure, $H$ , m	Wind exposure coefficient, $C_e$
0 to 10	1.0
Over 10 to 16	1.1
Over 16 to 25	1.2
Over 25 to 37	1.3
Over 37 to 54	1.4
Over 54 to 76	1.5
Over 76 to 105	1.6

### 3.10.1.5 Non-uniform loading

Wind loads shall be applied uniformly or non-uniformly over the entire structure, whichever produces the more critical effects. Unless an analysis of non-uniform wind loads specific to the structure is undertaken, the non-uniform loading shall be 0.75 times the effective uniformly distributed load over any portion of the structure and the full effective uniformly distributed load applied over the remaining portion.

### 3.10.1.6 Overturning and overall stability

When the prescribed loads in the design of members are being applied, overturning, uplift, and lateral displacement shall be considered.

### 3.10.1.7 Alternative methods

When Approved, representative wind tunnel tests or more detailed methods of analysis may be used to establish load coefficients or design criteria different from those specified in this Section.

Wind loads derived from the results of wind tunnel tests shall be used with wind load factors determined in accordance with Clause 3.10.5.2.

## 3.10.2 Design of the superstructure

### 3.10.2.1 General

The superstructure shall be designed for wind-induced vertical and horizontal drag loads acting simultaneously. The assumed wind direction shall be perpendicular to the longitudinal axis for a straight structure or to an axis chosen to maximize wind-induced effects for a structure curved in plan.

### Δ 3.10.2.2 Horizontal drag load

The following wind load per unit exposed frontal area of the superstructure shall be applied horizontally:

$$F_h = qC_eC_gC_h$$

where  $q$ ,  $C_e$ , and  $C_g$  are as specified in Clauses 3.10.1.2, 3.10.1.4, and 3.10.1.3, respectively, and  $C_h = 2.0$ .

In the case of truss spans, this load shall be taken to act on the windward truss simultaneously with a load on the leeward truss equal to the load on the windward truss in the through-trusses and 75% of the load on the windward truss in other trusses unless a recognized method is used to calculate the shielding effect of the windward truss.

### 3.10.2.3 Vertical load

The following wind load per unit exposed plan area of the superstructure shall be applied vertically:

$$F_v = qC_eC_gC_v$$

## 3.10.5 Wind tunnel tests

### 3.10.5.1 General

Structures that are sensitive to wind include those that are flexible, slender, lightweight, long span, or of unusual geometry. For such structures, supplementary studies by an expert in the field should be conducted, and it is possible that wind tunnel tests will be required. Representative wind tunnel tests may be used to satisfy the requirements of Clauses 3.10.4.1 and 3.10.4.2. These tests may also be used to establish the components of the overall structural loads specified in Clauses 3.10.2 and 3.10.3.

### Δ 3.10.5.2 Load factors

If the overall structural loads due to wind are determined using wind tunnel tests, the load factor for wind,  $\alpha_w$ , in ULS Combination 4 shall be calculated as

$$\alpha_w = 0.80\delta_w \exp(3.5kV_w)$$

where

$$k = \sqrt{\frac{V_w^2}{0.15^2 + V_w^2}}$$

The bias coefficient,  $\delta_w$ , and coefficient of variation,  $V_w$ , of the wind load effect shall be determined by the persons responsible for the wind tunnel tests and shall account for the bias and uncertainty of the reference wind pressure, the gust, the pressure and exposure coefficients, and the uncertainty of the modelling.

Wind load factors for design in the ULS Combination 3 and ULS Combination 7 shall be the product of the factor specified in Table 3.1 and the ratio ( $\alpha_w/1.50$ ).

## 3.11 Water loads

### 3.11.1 General

Local conditions at the site shall be considered in all cases.

### 3.11.2 Static pressure

Static water pressure shall be assumed to act perpendicular to the surface that is retaining the water. The pressure of water at a specific point shall be calculated as the product of the height of water above that point and the density of water.

### 3.11.3 Buoyancy

The effects of immersion in water or exposure to water pressure shall be considered. The beneficial effects of buoyancy shall be included, provided that they are always in existence. The non-beneficial effects of buoyancy shall be included unless the possibility of their occurrence can be excluded with certainty.

Buoyancy shall be taken as the vertical components of the static forces as calculated in accordance with Clause 3.11.2. Buoyancy shall be considered as an uplift force equivalent to the volume of water displaced.

### 3.11.4 Stream pressure

#### 3.11.4.1 Longitudinal effects

The load due to flowing water acting longitudinally on a substructure element,  $P$ , shall be taken as  $C_D\rho Av^2/2$ , where the longitudinal drag coefficient,  $C_D$ , is as specified in Table 3.10.

**Table 3.10**  
**Longitudinal drag coefficient,  $C_D$**   
 (See Clause 3.11.4.1.)

Upstream shape of pier	Longitudinal drag coefficient, $C_D$
Semi-circular nosed	0.7
Square ended	1.4
Wedge nosed at $\leq 90^\circ$	0.8
Pier with debris lodged	1.4

### 3.11.4.2 Lateral effects

The lateral load due to water flowing at angle,  $\theta$ , against a substructure element,  $P_p$ , shall be taken as  $C_L \rho H L v^2 / 2$ , where the lateral load coefficient,  $C_L$ , is as specified in Table 3.11.

**Table 3.11**  
**Lateral load coefficient,  $C_L$**   
 (See Clause 3.11.4.2.)

Angle, $\theta$ , between direction of flow and longitudinal pier axis, degrees	Lateral load coefficient, $C_L$
0	0.0
5	0.5
10	0.7
20	0.9
$\geq 30$	1.0

### 3.11.5 Wave action

Force effects due to wave action on bridge substructure elements exposed to environments where significant wave action can occur shall be evaluated in accordance with site-specific conditions. In the absence of such evaluations, the force against a flat surface substructure element,  $F_w$ , due to wave action, as a function of the wave height,  $H_w$ , shall be taken as  $10H_w^2$ .

$F_w$  shall be considered to act at mid-height of the wave,  $H_w/2$ , above the still water elevation. For aerodynamically curved frontal surfaces, a value of  $F_w/2$  shall be used.

### 3.11.6 Scour action

Local conditions and past records of floods shall be consulted in designing foundation elements when scour is expected to occur. The requirements of Sections 1 and 6 shall be applied. Changes in foundation conditions resulting from the design flood shall be considered at serviceability and ultimate limit states.

### 3.11.7 Debris torrents

Debris torrent loads shall be considered on exposed superstructures and substructures in accordance with site-specific conditions. Sites subject to heavy rainfall of short duration, earthquakes, landslides, and rockfalls shall be investigated for debris torrents when the following conditions exist:

- the creek channel gradient is greater than  $25^\circ$  for an extended length along the channel profile;
- boulders and debris exist in the channel;
- there is a history of such events.

An expert in the field shall be consulted to determine debris torrent loads.

## Annex A3.1 (normative)

# Climatic and environmental data

**Notes:**

(1) This Annex is a mandatory part of this Code.

(2) See Annex CA3.1 of CSA S6.1 for the sources and derivation of the data presented in this Annex.

**Table A3.1.1**  
**Reference wind pressure and seismic zoning**  
(See Clauses 3.10.1.2, 3.13, and 4.4.3.)

Location	Hourly mean wind pressure, Pa, for return periods of				Velocity- related seismic zone, $Z_v$	Zonal velocity ratio, $V$	Acceleration- related seismic zone, $Z_a$	Zonal acceleration ratio, $A$
	10 yr	25 yr	50 yr	100 yr				
<b>British Columbia</b>								
Abbotsford	415	530	620	710	4	0.20	4	0.20
Agassiz	570	675	755	840	3	0.15	3	0.15
Alberni	470	560	630	700	5	0.30	5	0.30
Ashcroft	280	340	385	430	2	0.10	1	0.05
Beatton River	220	265	300	340	1	0.05	0	0.00
Burns Lake	305	355	390	430	3	0.15	1	0.05
Cache Creek	285	340	380	430	2	0.10	1	0.05
Campbell River	455	560	640	720	6	0.40	6	0.40
Carmi	245	315	375	440	1	0.05	1	0.05
Castlegar	225	285	335	390	1	0.05	1	0.05
Chetwynd	320	370	405	440	1	0.05	0	0.00
Chilliwack	475	605	715	830	4	0.20	4	0.20
Cloverdale	360	420	470	520	4	0.20	—	—
Comox	445	555	645	740	6	0.40	6	0.40
Courtenay	445	555	645	740	6	0.40	6	0.40
Cranbrook	225	280	325	370	1	0.05	1	0.05
Crescent Valley	225	280	325	370	1	0.05	1	0.05
Crofton	485	565	625	690	5	0.30	5	0.30
Dawson Creek	310	365	400	440	1	0.05	0	0.00
Dog Creek	310	365	400	440	2	0.10	1	0.05
Duncan	485	565	625	690	5	0.30	5	0.30
Elko	270	355	425	500	1	0.05	1	0.05
Fernie	325	410	480	550	1	0.05	1	0.05
Fort Nelson	210	255	285	310	1	0.05	0	0.00
Fort St. John	305	350	385	420	1	0.05	0	0.00
Glacier	240	285	315	350	1	0.05	1	0.05
Golden	270	310	345	380	1	0.05	1	0.05
Grand Forks	265	345	415	480	1	0.05	1	0.05
Greenwood	285	375	445	520	1	0.05	1	0.05
Haney	360	420	470	520	4	0.20	—	—
Hope	405	525	625	730	3	0.15	3	0.15
Kamloops	305	360	405	450	1	0.05	1	0.05
Kaslo	225	275	320	360	1	0.05	1	0.05
Kelowna	340	410	470	530	1	0.05	1	0.05
Kimberley	225	280	325	370	1	0.05	1	0.05
Kitimat Plant	380	440	485	520	4	0.20	2	0.10
Kitimat Townsite	380	440	485	520	4	0.20	2	0.10
Δ Langley	360	420	470	520	4	0.20	—	—

(Continued)

**Table A3.1.1 (Continued)**

Location	Hourly mean wind pressure, Pa, for return periods of				Velocity- related seismic zone, $Z_V$	Zonal velocity ratio, $V$	Acceleration- related seismic zone, $Z_a$	Zonal acceleration ratio, $A$
	10 yr	25 yr	50 yr	100 yr				
<b>British Columbia (continued)</b>								
Lillooet	315	380	430	490	2	0.10	1	0.05
Lytton	310	380	435	490	2	0.10	2	0.10
Mackenzie	245	285	315	350	2	0.10	0	0.00
Masset	490	565	625	690	6	0.40	6	0.40
McBride	275	315	350	380	1	0.05	0	0.00
McLeod Lake	245	285	315	350	2	0.10	0	0.00
Merritt	315	380	430	490	2	0.10	1	0.05
Mission City	465	580	675	770	4	0.20	4	0.20
Montrose	215	285	340	410	1	0.05	1	0.05
Nakusp	235	285	330	370	1	0.05	1	0.05
Nanaimo	470	560	635	710	4	0.20	4	0.20
Nelson	225	280	325	370	1	0.05	1	0.05
New Westminster	360	420	470	520	4	0.20	—	—
North Vancouver	360	430	480	530	4	0.20	—	—
Ocean Falls	465	535	595	650	4	0.20	2	0.10
100 Mile House	300	355	390	430	1	0.05	1	0.05
Osoyoos	300	405	495	590	1	0.05	1	0.05
Penticton	395	505	590	680	1	0.05	1	0.05
Port Alberni	470	560	630	700	5	0.30	5	0.30
Port Hardy	485	565	625	660	6	0.40	6	0.40
Port McNeill	485	565	625	680	6	0.40	6	0.40
Powell River	420	530	620	710	5	0.30	5	0.30
Prince George	280	335	370	410	2	0.10	0	0.00
Prince Rupert	420	485	535	590	5	0.30	3	0.15
Princeton	240	310	365	420	2	0.10	2	0.10
Qualicum Beach	460	560	640	720	4	0.20	4	0.20
Quesnel	250	285	310	340	2	0.10	0	0.00
Revelstoke	240	285	315	350	1	0.05	1	0.05
Richmond	360	430	480	530	4	0.20	—	—
Salmon Arm	285	340	380	430	1	0.05	1	0.05
Sandspit	535	615	680	740	6	0.40	6	0.40
Sidney	460	535	595	660	5	0.30	5	0.30
Smithers	315	365	400	440	3	0.15	1	0.05
Smith River	210	255	285	310	2	0.10	1	0.05
Squamish	380	480	560	650	3	0.15	3	0.15
Stewart	325	380	425	480	4	0.20	2	0.10
Taylor	315	365	400	440	1	0.05	0	0.00
Terrace	270	330	360	400	4	0.20	2	0.10
Tofino	540	615	675	740	5	0.30	5	0.30
Trail	260	315	350	390	1	0.05	1	0.05
Ucluelet	540	615	675	740	5	0.30	5	0.30
Vancouver	360	430	480	530	4	0.20	4	0.20
Vernon	315	380	430	490	1	0.05	1	0.05
Victoria	475	560	630	690	5	0.30	6	0.40
Williams Lake	295	340	375	410	2	0.10	1	0.05
Yubou	460	535	595	660	4	0.20	4	0.20
<b>Alberta</b>								
Athabasca	305	360	405	450	1	0.05	0	0.00
Banff	390	440	485	520	1	0.05	0	0.00
Barrhead	315	380	430	490	1	0.05	0	0.00

(Continued)

The design vessel for each pier or span element shall be chosen so that the annual frequency of collapse due to vessels that are equal in size to or larger than the design vessel is less than the acceptable risk criterion specified in Item (a) or (b), as applicable.

### A3.3.3 Annual frequency of collapse

#### A3.3.3.1 General

The annual frequency of bridge component collapse due to vessel collision,  $AF$ , shall be taken as

$$AF = (N)(PA)(PG)(PC)$$

where

$N$  = the annual number of vessels, classified by type, size, and loading condition, that use the channel and can hit the bridge component

$PA$  = the probability of vessel aberrancy

$PG$  = the geometric probability of a collision between an aberrant vessel and a bridge pier or span

$PC$  = the probability of bridge collapse due to a collision with an aberrant vessel

$AF$  shall be calculated for each bridge element and vessel classification. The summation of all element  $AF$ s equals the annual frequency of collapse for the entire bridge structure.

#### A3.3.3.2 Probability of aberrancy

The probability of vessel aberrancy,  $PA$  (the probability that a vessel will stray off course and threaten a bridge) may be determined either by statistical analysis of historical data on vessels transiting the waterway or by the following approximate method:

$$PA = (BR)(R_B)(R_C)(R_{XC})(R_D)$$

where

$BR$  = aberrancy base rate (usually taken as  $0.6 \times 10^{-4}$  for ships)

$R_B$  = correction factor for bridge location

$R_C$  = correction factor for current acting parallel to vessel transit path

$R_{XC}$  = correction factor for cross-currents acting perpendicular to vessel transit path

$R_D$  = correction factor for vessel traffic density

#### A3.3.3.3 Correction factors

##### Δ A3.3.3.3.1 Factor for bridge location

Based on the relative location of the bridge in one of three waterway regions, as shown in Figure A3.3.1, the correction factor,  $R_B$ , shall be as follows:

(a) for straight regions: 1.0

(b) for transition regions:

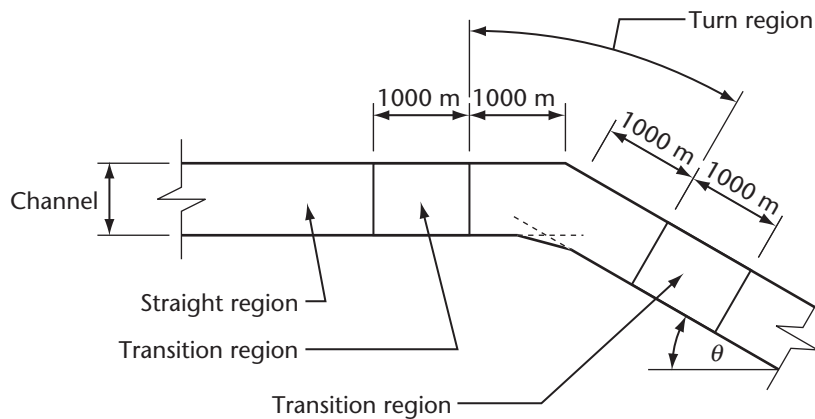
$$1.0 + \frac{\theta}{90^\circ}$$

(c) for turn/bend regions:

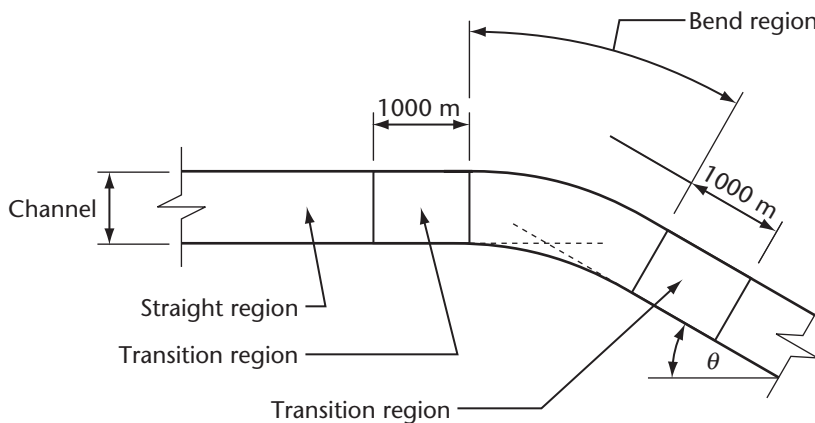
$$1.0 + \frac{\theta}{45^\circ}$$

where

$\theta$  = angle of the turn or bend specified in Figure A3.3.1, degrees



**(a) Turn in channel**



**(b) Bend in channel**

**Figure A3.3.1**  
**Waterway regions for bridge location**  
 (See Clause A3.3.3.1.)



**A3.3.3.3.2 Factor for parallel currents**

For currents acting parallel to the vessel transit path in the waterway, the correction factor shall be

$$R_C = 1.0 + \frac{V_C}{5}$$

where

$V_C$  = current velocity component parallel to vessel transit path, m/sec

**Δ A3.3.3.3.3 Factor for cross-currents**

For currents acting perpendicular to the vessel transit path in the waterway, the correction factor shall be

$$R_{XC} = 1.0 + \frac{V_{XC}}{2}$$

where

$V_{XC}$  = current velocity component perpendicular to vessel transit path, m/sec

**A3.3.3.3.4 Factor for vessel traffic density**

The correction factor,  $R_D$ , selected on the basis of the ship traffic density in the waterway in the immediate vicinity of the bridge, shall be

- (a) 1.0 for low-density traffic, in which vessels rarely meet, pass, or overtake each other in the immediate vicinity of the bridge;
- (b) 1.3 for average-density traffic, in which vessels occasionally meet, pass, or overtake each other in the immediate vicinity of the bridge; or
- (c) 1.6 for high-density traffic, in which vessels routinely meet, pass, or overtake each other in the immediate vicinity of the bridge.

**A3.3.3.3.5 Geometric probability**

The geometric probability,  $PG$ , being the conditional probability that an aberrant vessel in the zone will hit a pier, may be determined by a normal distribution to model the aberrant vessel sailing path near the bridge or by the following approximate method:

$$PG = 1 - \frac{L_C - B}{Z_W}$$

where

$L_C$  = width of horizontal clearance from the pier(s), m

$B$  = width of ship, m

$Z_W$  = width of zone, m

For the same zone and pier widths,  $PG$  shall be calculated for each ship category. A similar equation based on vertical clearance may be used to calculate  $PG$  values for an impact between bridge spans and vessel superstructures.

**A3.3.3.3.6 Probability of collapse**

The probability of bridge collapse,  $PC$ , once a bridge component has been hit by an aberrant vessel, being based on the ratio of the ultimate lateral resistance of the pier,  $H_P$ , and span,  $H_S$ , to the vessel impact force,  $P$ , as shown in Figure A3.3.2, shall be calculated as follows:

$$PC = 0.1 + 9(0.1 - H/P) \text{ if } 0.0 \leq H/P < 0.1$$

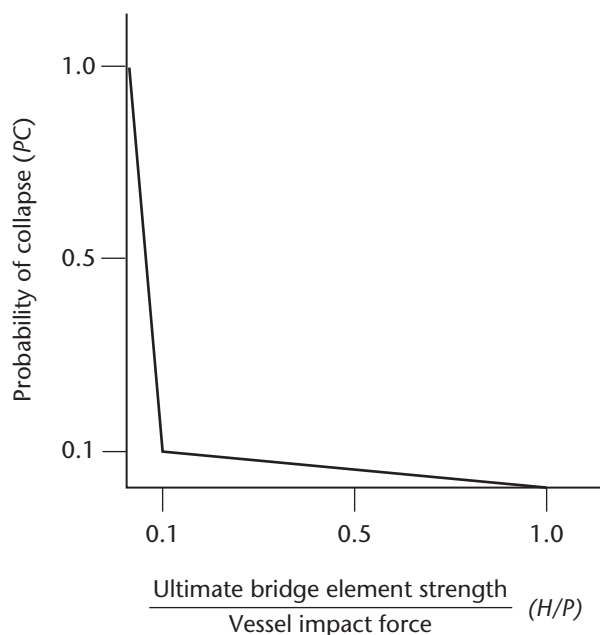
$$PC = \frac{(1-H/P)}{9} \text{ if } 0.1 \leq H/P \leq 1.0$$

$$PC = 0.0 \text{ if } H/P > 1.0$$

where

$H$  = ultimate bridge element strength,  $H_p$  or  $H_s$ , MN

$P$  = vessel impact forces,  $P_s$ ,  $P_{BH}$ ,  $P_{DH}$ , or  $P_{MT}$ , MN, as specified in Clauses A3.3.5 and A3.3.7



**Figure A3.3.2**  
**Probability of collapse distribution**  
 (See Clause A3.3.3.3.6.)

## A3.3.4 Design collision velocity

### A3.3.4.1 Transit velocity in channel

The vessel transit velocity,  $V_T$ , shall represent the velocity at which the design vessel is transiting the channel or waterway under normal environmental conditions.

### A3.3.4.2 Minimum collision velocity

The minimum collision velocity,  $V_{min}$ , shall not be less than the yearly mean current velocity at the bridge location. In waterways subject to seasonal flooding, flood flow velocity shall be considered in determining the collision velocity.

### A3.3.4.3 Distribution

When an aberrant vessel wanders away from the navigation channel, its velocity shall be considered to reduce linearly to the minimum velocity over a distance equal to three times the overall length of the design vessel, as shown in Figure A3.3.3.

**Table 4.3**  
**Regular bridge requirements**  
(See Clause 4.4.5.3.2.)

	Number of spans				
	2	3	4	5	6
Maximum subtended angle (curved bridge)	90°	90°	90°	90°	90°
Maximum span length ratio from span to span	3	2	2	1.5	1.5
Maximum bent or pier stiffness ratio from span to span (excluding abutments)					
Continuous superstructure or multiple simple spans with longitudinal restrainers and transverse restraint at each support or a continuous deck slab	—	4	4	3	2
Multiple simple spans without restrainers or a continuous deck slab	—	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25

**Note:** All ratios are expressed in terms of the smaller value.

## 4.4.6 Site effects

### 4.4.6.1 General

The effects of site conditions on bridge response shall be included in the determination of seismic loads for bridges.

The site coefficient,  $S$ , specified in Table 4.4, shall be based on the soil profile types specified in Clauses 4.4.6.2 to 4.4.6.5.

Subject to the requirements of Clause 4.4.6.6, a site coefficient need not be explicitly identified if a site-specific seismic response coefficient is developed by a qualified specialist.

**Table 4.4**  
**Site coefficient,  $S$**   
(See Clauses 4.4.6.1 and 4.4.6.6.)

Soil profile type	Site coefficient, $S$
I	1.0
II	1.2
III	1.5
IV	2.0

### 4.4.6.2 Soil Profile Type I

Soil Profile Type I is a profile with

- rock of any characteristic, shale-like or crystalline in nature (such material can be characterized by a shear wave velocity greater than 750 m/s or by another appropriate means of classification); or
- stiff soil conditions where the soil depth is less than 60 m and the soil types overlying rock are stable deposits of sands, gravels, or stiff clays.

#### 4.4.6.3 Soil Profile Type II

Soil Profile Type II is a profile with stiff clay or deep cohesionless soils where the soil depth exceeds 60 m and the soil types overlying rock are stable deposits of sands, gravels, or stiff clays.

#### 4.4.6.4 Soil Profile Type III

Soil Profile Type III is a profile with soft to medium-stiff clays and sands, characterized by 9 m or more of soft to medium-stiff clays with or without intervening layers of sand or other cohesionless soils.

#### 4.4.6.5 Soil Profile Type IV

Soil Profile Type IV is a profile with soft clays or silts greater than 12 m in depth. These materials can be characterized by a shear wave velocity less than 150 m/s and can include loose natural deposits or non-engineered fill.

#### 4.4.6.6 Other soil profile types

For other soil profile types, or where the soil properties are not known in sufficient detail to determine the soil profile type with confidence, the Engineer shall use his or her judgment to select a site coefficient from Table 4.4 that conservatively represents the amplification effects at the site. The soil profile coefficients shall apply to all foundation types, including pile-supported and spread footings.

### 4.4.7 Elastic seismic response coefficient

#### Δ 4.4.7.1 General

Unless otherwise specified in Clause 4.4.7.2, the elastic seismic response coefficient,  $C_{sm}$ , for the  $m$ th mode of vibration shall be

$$C_{sm} = \frac{1.2AIS}{T_m^{2/3}} \leq 2.5AI$$

where

- $A$  = zonal acceleration ratio specified in Clause 4.4.3
- $S$  = site coefficient specified in Clause 4.4.6
- $T_m$  = period of vibration of the  $m$ th mode, s
- $I$  = importance factor based on the importance category specified in Clause 4.4.2
  - = 3.0 for lifeline bridges, but need not be taken greater than the value of  $R$  for the ductile substructure elements specified in Table 4.5
  - = 1.5 for emergency-route bridges
  - = 1.0 for other bridges

#### 4.4.7.2 Exceptions

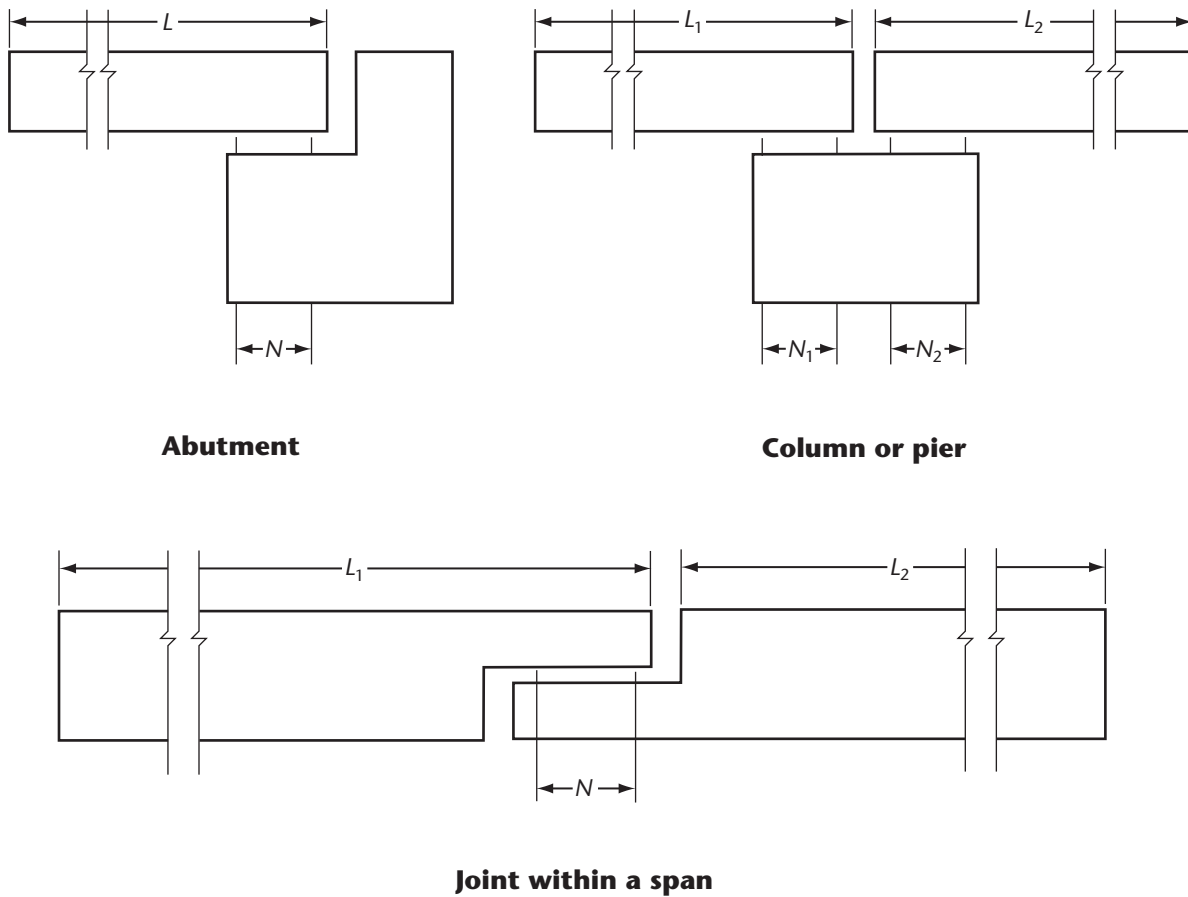
The following exceptions shall apply:

- (a) For Soil Profile Type III or Type IV soils in areas where the zonal acceleration ratio is equal to or greater than 0.30,  $C_{sm}$  need not exceed  $2.0AI$ .
- (b) For Soil Profile Type III or Type IV soils,  $C_{sm}$  for modes other than the fundamental mode that have periods less than 0.3 s shall be taken as

$$C_{sm} = AI(0.8 + 4.0T_m)$$

- (c) For structures in which the period of vibration of any mode exceeds 4.0 s, the value of  $C_{sm}$  for that mode shall be taken as

$$C_{sm} = \frac{3AIS}{T_m^{4/3}}$$



**Figure 4.1**  
**Dimensions for minimum support lengths**  
(See Clause 4.4.10.5.)

**Table 4.6**  
**Modification factor, *K***  
(See Clause 4.4.10.5.)

Seismic performance zone	Zonal acceleration ratio	Soil profile type	Modification factor, <i>K</i>
1	0	I or II	0.5
1	0	III or IV	1.0
1	0.05	All	1.0
2	All applicable	All	1.0
3	All applicable	All	1.5
4	All applicable	All	1.5

#### 4.4.10.6 Longitudinal restrainers

Restrainers shall be designed to ensure integrity under excessive forces or movements without experiencing brittle failures. Friction shall not be considered to be an effective restrainer.

Restrainers shall be designed for a force calculated as three times the zonal acceleration ratio,  $A$ , multiplied by the dead load of the lighter of the two adjoining spans or parts of the structure, but the factor  $3A$  shall not be less than 0.2.

If the restrainer is at a point where relative displacement of sections of the superstructure will occur due to effects such as temperature change and shrinkage, sufficient slack shall be provided in the restrainer so that the restrainer does not restrict such movements.

Where restrainers are to be provided at columns or piers, the restrainer of each span may be attached to the column or pier rather than interconnecting adjacent spans. Where a column or pier could be subject to instability due to ground liquefaction or excessive ground movements, the restrainer shall be attached to the column or pier.

The connections of a restrainer to the superstructure or substructure shall be designed to resist 125% of the ultimate restrainer capacity. Restrainers shall be designed to remain elastic under the design seismic forces specified in this Section.

#### 4.4.10.7 Hold-down devices

For bridges in Seismic Performance Zones 2, 3, and 4, hold-down devices shall be provided at supports and at hinges where the vertical force effect resulting from the seismic load cases specified in Clause 4.4.9.2 or 4.4.9.3 opposes and exceeds 50% but is less than 100% of the reaction due to dead loads. In this case, the net upward force for the design of the hold-down device shall be taken as 10% of the reaction due to dead loads that would be exerted if the span were simply supported.

If the vertical seismic forces result in net uplift, the hold-down device shall be designed to resist the larger of

- (a) 120% of the difference between the vertical seismic force and the reaction due to dead loads; and
- (b) 10% of the reaction due to dead loads that would be exerted if the span were simply supported.

### 4.5 Analysis

#### 4.5.1 General

The minimum analysis requirements for seismic effects are specified in Clauses 4.4.5.2 and 4.4.5.3. The four types of analysis are described in Clauses 4.5.3.1 to 4.5.3.4.

In the analysis methods specified in Clause 4.5.3, the actual weight shall be taken as the effective weight.

In the modelling of reinforced concrete sections, either uncracked or cracked cross-sectional properties shall be used when the periods and force effects are calculated. The effects of cracking shall be taken into account in calculating deflections.

For the modal methods specified in analysis specified in Clauses 4.5.3.2 and 4.5.3.3, the elastic design spectrum shall be in accordance with Clause 4.4.7.

Bridges in Seismic Performance Zone 1 need not be analyzed for seismic loads, regardless of their importance and geometry. However, the minimum requirements specified in Clauses 4.4.10.2 and 4.4.10.5 shall apply.

#### 4.5.2 Single-span bridges

Seismic analysis of single-span bridges shall not be required, regardless of seismic zone, except as required by Clause 4.4.5.2.1.

### 4.5.3 Multi-span bridges

#### 4.5.3.1 Uniform-load method

The uniform load method is applicable to both transverse and longitudinal earthquake motions. The equivalent uniformly distributed static seismic loading,  $P_e$ , shall be taken as

$$P_e = \frac{C_{sm}W}{L}$$

where

$W$  = effective weight of the bridge

$L$  = total length of the bridge

In determining  $C_{sm}$  from Clause 4.4.7.1, the period of vibration of the bridge,  $T$ , shall be taken as

$$T = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{W}{gK}}$$

where

$g$  = acceleration due to gravity,  $m/s^2$

$K$  = lateral stiffness of the bridge

$$= \frac{p_o L}{V_{s,max}}$$

where

$V_{s,max}$  = maximum static displacement of the bridge due to an arbitrary uniform lateral load,  $p_o$

#### Δ 4.5.3.2 Single-mode spectral method

The single-mode spectral method of analysis shall be based on the fundamental mode of vibration in either the longitudinal or transverse direction, as appropriate. This mode shape may be found by applying a uniform horizontal load to the structure and calculating the corresponding deformed shape. The natural period may be calculated by equating the maximum potential and kinetic energies associated with the fundamental mode shape or by a more rigorous dynamic analysis. The amplitude of the displaced shape may be found from the elastic seismic response coefficient,  $C_{sm}$ , specified in Clause 4.4.7.1 and the corresponding spectral displacement. This amplitude shall be used to determine force effects.

The intensity of the equivalent static seismic loading,  $p_e(x)$ , shall be taken as

$$p_e(x) = \frac{\beta C_{sm}}{\gamma} W(x) V_s(x)$$

where

$$\beta = \int W(x) V_s(x) dx$$

$C_{sm}$  = elastic seismic response coefficient in Clause 4.4.7.1

$V_s$  = deformation corresponding to  $p_o$

where

$p_o$  = an arbitrary uniform lateral load

$$\gamma = \int W(x) V_s^2(x) dx$$

$W(x)$  = effective weight of the bridge

In determining  $C_{sm}$ , the period of vibration of the bridge,  $T$ , shall be taken as

$$T = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{\gamma}{\rho_o g \alpha}}$$

where

$$\alpha = \int V_s(x) dx$$

#### 4.5.3.3 Multi-mode spectral method

The multi-mode spectral method of analysis shall be used for bridges in which coupling occurs in more than one of the three coordinate directions within each mode of vibration. A three-dimensional model shall be used to represent the structure.

The number of modes used in the analysis shall be such that 90% mass participation of the superstructure in the direction under consideration is accounted for. The elastic seismic response spectrum specified in Clause 4.4.7 shall be used for each mode.

The member forces and displacements shall be estimated using an accepted modal combination procedure. For bridges with closely spaced modes (within 10% of each other in terms of natural frequency), the complete quadratic combination (CQC) method or the absolute sum of the modal quantities shall be used.

#### 4.5.3.4 Time-history method

The time-histories of input acceleration used to describe the earthquake loads shall be selected in consultation with the Regulatory Authority. Unless the Regulatory Authority otherwise directs, five spectrum-compatible time histories shall be used when site-specific time-histories are not available. The spectrum used to generate these five time-histories shall be the seismic response spectrum specified in Clause 4.4.7. If site-specific time-histories are used, they shall include the site soil profile effects and be modified by the importance factor,  $I$ .

Every step-by-step time-history method of analysis used for elastic or inelastic analysis shall satisfy the requirements of Clause 5.11.

If an inelastic time-history method of analysis is used, the  $R$ -factors shall be taken as 1.0.

The sensitivity of the numerical solution to the size of the time step used for the analysis shall be determined. A sensitivity study shall also be carried out to investigate the effects of variations in assumed material hysteretic properties.

#### 4.5.3.5 Static pushover analysis

The static pushover analysis shall be a step-by-step force deformation response analysis that takes account of inelastic response and the structural detailing specified in the design, e.g., anchorage of reinforcement for reinforced concrete members and connection details for steel members. Possible local and global instability and brittle failure modes shall be considered. The analysis results may be used to determine the deformation capacity of the structure.

## 4.6 Foundations

### 4.6.1 General

In addition to satisfying the requirements of Section 6, the requirements specified in Clauses 4.6.2 to 4.6.6 shall also be satisfied in Seismic Performance Zones 2, 3, and 4.

### 4.6.2 Liquefaction of foundation soils

An evaluation shall be made of the potential for liquefaction of foundation soils and the impact of liquefaction on bridge foundations.



#### 4.7.4.2.5 Transverse reinforcement for confinement at plastic hinge regions

The cores of columns and concrete pile bents shall be confined by transverse reinforcement in the expected plastic hinge regions. The transverse reinforcement for confinement shall have a yield strength not more than that of the longitudinal reinforcement and the spacing shall be in accordance with Clause 4.7.4.2.6.

For a circular column, the ratio of spiral reinforcement,  $\rho_s$ , shall not be less than the greater of that determined in accordance with Clause 8.14.4.2 or

$$\rho_s = 0.12 \frac{f'_c}{f_y} \left[ 0.5 + \frac{1.25P_f}{\phi_c f'_c A_g} \right]$$

where

$$\left[ 0.5 + \frac{1.25P_f}{\phi_c f'_c A_g} \right] \geq 1.0$$

Within plastic hinge regions, splices in spiral reinforcement shall be in accordance with Clause 8.14.4.2. Lap splices in longitudinal reinforcement shall be used only as specified in Clause 4.7.4.2.7.

For rectangular columns, the total cross-sectional area,  $A_{sh}$ , of transverse reinforcement shall not be less than the greater of

$$A_{sh} = 0.30sh_c \frac{f'_c}{f_y} \left[ \frac{A_g}{A_c} - 1 \right]$$

$$A_{sh} = 0.12sh_c \frac{f'_c}{f_y} \left[ 0.5 + \frac{1.25P_f}{\phi_c f'_c A_g} \right]$$

where

$$\left[ 0.5 + \frac{1.25P_f}{\phi_c f'_c A_g} \right] \geq 1.0$$

and  $s$  is the vertical spacing of transverse reinforcement.

$A_{sh}$  shall be calculated for both principal axes of a rectangular column and the larger value shall be used.

Transverse reinforcement in plastic hinge regions shall be provided by single or overlapping hoops or spirals. Seismic cross-ties having the same bar size as the tie may be used. Each end of the seismic cross-tie shall engage a peripheral longitudinal reinforcing bar. Seismic cross-ties shall be alternated so that hooks that do not qualify as seismic hooks are not adjacent to each other in the horizontal and vertical directions.

#### 4.7.4.2.6 Spacing of transverse reinforcement for confinement

Transverse reinforcement for confinement shall be provided in the plastic hinge regions specified in Clause 4.7.4.2.4 and shall extend into the top and bottom connections in accordance with Clause 4.7.4.4.

The centre-to-centre spacing shall not exceed the smallest of 0.25 times the minimum component dimension, six times the diameter of the longitudinal reinforcement, or 150 mm.

The centre-to-centre spacing of interlocking spirals or hoop cages in oblong columns shall not be greater than 0.75 times the diameter of the spiral or hoop cage. A minimum of four vertical bars shall be located within each overlapping region of the spirals or hoops.

#### 4.7.4.2.7 Splices

Splices shall satisfy the requirements of this Clause and Clause 8.15.9.

Lap splices in longitudinal reinforcement shall not be located in plastic hinge regions and shall be permitted only within the centre half of column height unless the splices are located in a region where it is demonstrated that plastic hinging will not occur. The splice length shall not be less than the greater of 60 bar diameters or 400 mm. The centre-to-centre spacing of the transverse reinforcement over the length of the splice shall not exceed the smaller of 0.25 times the minimum cross-section dimensions of the component or 100 mm.

Welded splices in accordance with Clause 8.15.9.2 or mechanical connection splices in accordance with Clause 8.4.4.4 may be used if not more than alternate bars in each layer of longitudinal reinforcement are spliced at a section and the distance between splices of adjacent bars is greater than the larger of 600 mm or  $40d_b$  measured along the longitudinal axis of the column.

#### Δ 4.7.4.3 Wall-type piers

The requirements of this Clause shall apply to the design for the strong direction of a wall-type pier. The weak direction may be designed as a column in accordance with Clause 4.7.4.2. If the wall-type pier is not designed as a column in its weak direction, the limitations for shear resistance specified in this Clause shall apply.

The reinforcement ratio, both horizontally,  $\rho_h$ , and vertically,  $\rho_v$ , in any wall-type pier shall not be less than 0.0025, and  $\rho_v$  shall not be less than  $\rho_h$ .

Reinforcement spacing, both horizontally and vertically, shall not exceed 450 mm. The reinforcement required for shear shall be continuous and shall be distributed uniformly.

The shear resistance,  $V_r$ , of the pier shall be taken as the lesser of  $2.25\phi_c f_{cr} bd$  and  $(0.41\phi_c f_{cr} + \rho_h \phi_s f_y) bd$ . Horizontal and vertical reinforcement shall be provided at each face of a pier. Splices in horizontal reinforcement shall be staggered and splices in horizontal and vertical layers shall not occur at the same location.

Ties for end wall reinforcement need not extend across the strong direction.

#### 4.7.4.4 Column connections

The design forces for column connections shall be those for capacity-protected elements in accordance with Clause 4.4.10.4.2. The development length for all longitudinal steel shall be 1.25 times that specified in Clause 8.15.2.

Column transverse reinforcement, as specified in Clause 4.7.4.2.5, shall be continued for a distance not less than the greater of 0.5 times the maximum column dimension or 400 mm from the face of the column connection into the adjoining component.

The shear resistance provided by the concrete in the joint of a frame or bent, in the direction under consideration, shall not exceed  $2.5\phi_c f_{cr} bd$ .

### 4.7.5 Piles

#### 4.7.5.1 General

Pile reinforcing details shall meet the requirements of Clauses 4.7.5.2 to 4.7.5.4 and 8.23.

#### 4.7.5.2 Seismic Performance Zone 1

No additional design provisions need to be considered for Seismic Performance Zone 1.

#### 4.7.5.3 Seismic Performance Zone 2

##### 4.7.5.3.1 General

Piles for structures in Seismic Performance Zone 2 shall meet the requirements of Clause 4.4.10.3.

Concrete piles shall be anchored to the pile footing or cap by embedment of pile reinforcement or by anchorages to develop uplift forces. The embedment length shall not be less than 1.25 times the development length required for the reinforcement specified in Clause 8.15.

Concrete-filled pipe piles shall be anchored by at least four dowels with a minimum steel ratio of 0.01. Dowels shall be embedded in the manner normally used for concrete piles.

## Δ Section 5 — Methods of analysis

- 5.1 Scope 161
- 5.2 Definitions 161
- 5.3 Abbreviations and symbols 164
  - 5.3.1 Abbreviations 164
  - 5.3.2 Symbols 164
- 5.4 General requirements 167
  - 5.4.1 Application 167
  - 5.4.2 Analysis for limit states 167
  - 5.4.3 Modelling 167
  - 5.4.4 Structural responses 167
  - 5.4.5 Factors affecting structural responses 170
  - 5.4.6 Deformations 170
  - 5.4.7 Diaphragms and bracing systems 170
  - 5.4.8 Analysis of deck slabs 171
  - 5.4.9 Analysis for redistribution of force effects 171
  - 5.4.10 Analysis for accumulation of force effects due to construction sequence 171
  - 5.4.11 Analysis for effects of prestress 171
  - 5.4.12 Analysis for thermal effects 171
  - 5.4.13 Secondary stability effects 171
- 5.5 Requirements for specific bridge types 171
  - 5.5.1 General 171
  - 5.5.2 Voided slab — Limitation on size of voids 171
  - 5.5.3 Deck-on-girder 172
  - 5.5.4 Truss and arch 172
  - 5.5.5 Rigid frame and integral abutment types 172
  - 5.5.6 Transverse wood deck 172
  - 5.5.7 Box girder 172
  - 5.5.8 Single-spine bridges 173
- 5.6 Dead load 173
  - 5.6.1 Simplified methods of analysis (beam analogy method) 173
  - 5.6.2 Refined methods of analysis 174
- 5.7 Live load 174
  - 5.7.1 Simplified methods of analysis 174
  - 5.7.2 Refined methods of analysis 202
- 5.8 Idealization of structure and interpretation of results 203
  - 5.8.1 General 203
  - 5.8.2 Effective flange widths for bending 203
  - 5.8.3 Idealization for analysis 207
- 5.9 Refined methods of analysis for short- and medium-span bridges 207
  - 5.9.1 Selection of methods of analysis 207
  - 5.9.2 Specific applications 207
  - 5.9.3 Model analysis 207
- 5.10 Long-span bridges 210
  - 5.10.1 General 210
  - 5.10.2 Cable-stayed bridges 210
  - 5.10.3 Suspension bridges 210
- 5.11 Dynamic analysis 210
  - 5.11.1 General requirements of structural analysis 210
  - 5.11.2 Elastic dynamic responses 211
  - 5.11.3 Inelastic-dynamic responses 211
  - 5.11.4 Analysis for collision loads 211

- 5.11.5 Seismic analysis 211
- 5.12 Stability and magnification of force effects 212
- 5.12.1 General 212
- 5.12.2 Member stability analysis for magnification of member bending moments 212
- 5.12.3 Structural stability analysis for lateral sway 212
- 5.12.4 Structural stability analysis for assemblies of individual members 212A

**Annexes**

- A5.1** (normative) — Factors affecting structural response 213
- A5.2** (informative) — Two-dimensional analysis 217

- $E_s$  = modulus of elasticity of steel  
 $e$  = for orthotropic steel decks, the distance centre-to-centre between adjacent closed ribs  
 $F$  = when a bridge superstructure is analyzed in accordance with simplified methods, a width dimension that characterizes load distribution for a bridge, as specified in Clauses 5.7.1.2 to 5.7.1.5 and 5.7.1.6.2, m  
 $F_m$  = when a bridge superstructure is analyzed in accordance with simplified methods, an amplification factor to account for the transverse variation in maximum longitudinal moment intensity, as compared to the average longitudinal moment intensity  
 $F_v$  = when a bridge superstructure is analyzed in accordance with simplified methods, an amplification factor to account for the transverse variation in maximum longitudinal vertical shear intensity, as compared to the average longitudinal vertical shear intensity  
 $G$  = shear modulus  
 $G_{LT}$  = shear modulus of wood with respect to axes  $L$  and  $T$  shown in Figure A5.2.2  
 $G_c$  = shear modulus of concrete  
 $G_s$  = shear modulus of steel  
 $I$  = moment of inertia of the cross-section of a beam  
 $i_L$  = longitudinal moment of inertia per unit width  
 $i_T$  = transverse moment of inertia per unit length  
 $J$  = torsional inertia of a beam  
 $j_L$  = longitudinal torsional inertia per unit width  
 $j_T$  = transverse torsional inertia per unit length  
 $K$  = torsional constant for a rectangular section  
 $k$  = constant used in calculating maximum transverse vertical shear intensity due to live load in shear-connected beam bridges (see Clause 5.7.1.8.1)  
 $L$  = for simply supported spans, the span; for continuous spans, the span specified in Clause A5.1.2  
 $L_s$  = stringer span  
 $\ell_1, \ell_2$  = distances between points of inflection, as shown in Figure 5.6 for orthotropic steel decks  
 $M_T$  = maximum longitudinal moment for one lane width of truck or lane loading, as applicable, including dynamic load allowance  
 $\Delta M_e$  = moment at the end of an individual compression member  
 $M_g$  = for girder-type bridges, the maximum longitudinal moment per girder due to live load, including the effects of amplification for transverse variation in maximum longitudinal moment intensity and dynamic loading  
 $M_{g,avg}$  = average moment per girder due to live load, determined by sharing equally the total live load moment on the bridge cross-section among all girders in the cross-section  
 $\Delta M_{ns}$  = moment at the end of a compression member due to loads that cause no appreciable sway, calculated using first-order elastic analysis  
 $\Delta M_s$  = moment at the end of a compression member due to loads that cause appreciable sway, calculated using first-order elastic analysis  
 $M_x$  = longitudinal bending moment per unit width  
 $M_{xy}$  = longitudinal torsional moment per unit width  
 $M_y$  = transverse bending moment per unit length  
 $m$  = for bridges of the solid cross-section type, e.g., slabs, voided slabs, and wood deck bridges that span longitudinally, the maximum longitudinal moment per metre of width due to live load  
 $m_{avg}$  = for bridges of the solid cross-section type, e.g., slabs, voided slabs, and wood deck bridges that span longitudinally, the average longitudinal moment per metre of width due to live load  
 $\Delta N$  = number of girders or longitudinal wood beams in the bridge deck width

- $n$  = modular ratio,  $E_s/E_c$ , for steel and concrete; modular ratio of girder or beam material to slab material; number of design lanes on a bridge
- $\Delta P$  = wheel load of the CL-625 Truck
- $R$  = mean radius of curvature of the curved portion of a bridge that is curved in plan
- $R_L$  = modification factor for multi-lane loading in accordance with Clause 3.8.4.2
- $r_t$  = ratio of the thickness,  $t_1$ , of the deck slab at the exterior edge of a bridge deck to the thickness,  $t_2$ , at the edge of the flange of the external girder
- $S$  = centre-to-centre spacing of longitudinal girders of a deck-on-girder bridge; centre-to-centre spacing of circular voids of a voided slab bridge; centre-to-centre spacing of spines of a multi-spine bridge
- $\Delta S_c$  = transverse distance from the free edge of the cantilever overhang to the centreline of the web of the external girder
- $\Delta S_e$  = equivalent span of concrete deck in metres (see Clause 5.7.1.7.1)
- $\Delta S_p$  = transverse distance of the free edge of the cantilever overhang to the supported edge (see Clause 5.7.1.6.1.1)
- $S_y$  = transverse shear rigidity per unit length
- $s_v$  = shear area per unit length, as specified in Clause A5.2.1
- $t$  = overall thickness of a slab
- $t_v$  = depth of circular or rectangular void in voided slabs
- $t_1$  = slab thickness at the external edge of the deck slab
- $t_2$  = slab thickness at the edge of the flange of the external girder
- $V_T$  = maximum longitudinal vertical shear for one lane width of truck or lane loading, as applicable, including dynamic load allowance
- $V_g$  = for girder-type bridges, the maximum longitudinal vertical shear per girder due to live load, including the effects of amplification for transverse variation in maximum longitudinal vertical shear intensity and dynamic loading
- $V_{g,avg}$  = average shear per girder due to live load, determined by sharing equally the total live load shear on the bridge cross-section among all girders in the cross-section
- $V_y$  = maximum intensity of transverse vertical shear in shear-connected beam bridges
- $v$  = for slab, voided slab, and wood deck bridges that span longitudinally, the maximum longitudinal vertical shear per metre of width due to live load, including the effects of amplification for transverse variation in maximum longitudinal vertical shear intensity and dynamic loading
- $v_{avg}$  = average shear per metre of width due to live load for slab, voided slab, and wood deck bridges that span longitudinally, determined by sharing uniformly the total live load shear on the bridge cross-section over the width of the bridge cross-section
- $W_e$  = width of a design lane, m
- $w$  = transverse deflection of plates as used in the plate theory
- $x$  = transverse distance between the face of the railing and the longitudinal line where moment intensity is investigated in a cantilever slab, m
- $x, y$  = coordinates of a reference point on a cantilever slab, as shown in Figure 5.2
- $\beta$  = parameter specified in Clause 5.7.1.3
- $\Delta \delta_s$  = moment magnification factor accounting for second-order effects of vertical load acting on a structure in a laterally displaced configuration
- $\varepsilon$  = skew parameter specified in Clause 5.6.1.1
- $\mu$  = lane width modification factor
- $\nu$  = Poisson's ratio

- $\psi$  = skew angle; for orthotropic steel decks, the effective plate width factor for interior portions of the deck, as shown in Figure 5.6
- $\psi_p$  = for orthotropic steel decks, the effective plate width factor for exterior portions of the deck, as shown in Figure 5.6





**Table 5.4**  
 **$F$  and  $C_f$  for longitudinal bending moments in shallow**  
**superstructures corresponding to the fatigue limit state**  
(See Clause 5.7.1.2.2.2.)

Bridge type (see Clause 5.1)	No. of design lanes	Portion	$F$ , m		$C_f$ , %	
			$3 \text{ m} < L \leq 10 \text{ m}$	$L > 10 \text{ m}$		
Type A or B	1	External	$3.80 + 0.04L$	4.20	$16 - (36/L)$	
		Internal	$4.00 + 0.04L$	4.40	$16 - (36/L)$	
	2	External	$3.60 + 0.26L$	$7.00 - (8/L)$	$16 - (36/L)$	
		Internal	$3.20 + 0.30L$	$6.40 - (2/L)$	$16 - (36/L)$	
	3	External	$3.30 + 0.30L$	$9.60 - (33/L)$	$16 - (36/L)$	
		Internal	$3.00 + 0.40L$	$9.80 - (29/L)$	$12 - (36/L)$	
	4 or more	External	$3.40 + 0.30L$	$12.00 - (56/L)$	$10 - (30/L)$	
		Internal	$3.00 + 0.44L$	$12.00 - (46/L)$	$10 - (30/L)$	
Δ Type C slab-on-girder	1	External	3.30	$3.50 - (2/L)$	$5 - (12/L)$	
		Internal	$3.30 + 0.05L$	$4.40 - (6/L)$	$5 - (12/L)$	
	2	External	3.60	$3.80 - (2/L)$	$5 - (15/L)$	
		Internal	$2.80 + 0.12L$	$4.60 - (6/L)$	$5 - (15/L)$	
	3	External	$3.60 + 0.01L$	$3.70 + \frac{(L-10)}{140}$	0	
		Internal	$2.80 + 0.12L$	$4.80 - (8/L)$	0	
	4 or more	External	3.80	$3.80 + \frac{(L-10)}{140}$	0	
		Internal	$2.80 + 0.12L$	$5.00 - (10/L)$	0	
	Type C with 140 mm laminated wood deck*	1	External	3.40	3.40	0
			Internal	$2.80 + 0.06L$	$4.20 - (8/L)$	0
		2	External	3.60	$3.80 - (2/L)$	0
			Internal	$3.00 + 0.06L$	$4.40 - (8/L)$	0
3		External	3.60	$3.80 - (2/L)$	0	
		Internal	$3.00 + 0.06L$	$4.40 - (8/L)$	0	
4 or more		External	3.60	$3.80 - (2/L)$	0	
		Internal	$3.00 + 0.06L$	$4.40 - (8/L)$	0	
Type C with 290 mm laminated wood deck*	1	External	3.50	3.50	0	
		Internal	$3.30 + 0.05L$	$4.80 - 20/(L + 10)$	$5 - (12/L)$	
	2	External	$3.50 + 0.02L$	$3.90 - (2/L)$	$6 - (15/L)$	
		Internal	$3.30 + 0.05L$	$5.40 - 3.20\sqrt{L-6}$	$6 - (15/L)$	
	3	External	$3.50 + 0.02L$	$3.90 - (2/L)$	$10 - (21/L)$	
		Internal	$3.40 + 0.06L$	$5.50 - 1350/(L + 20)^2$	$10 - (21/L)$	
	4 or more	External	$3.50 + 0.02L$	$3.90 - (2/L)$	$10 - (21/L)$	
		Internal	$3.60 + (L^2/200)$	$6.00 - (19/L)$	$10 - (21/L)$	

(Continued)

**Table 5.4 (Continued)**

Bridge type (see Clause 5.1)	No. of design lanes	Portion	$F$ , m		$C_f$ , %
			$3 \text{ m} < L \leq 10 \text{ m}$	$L > 10 \text{ m}$	
Type C steel-grid-deck-on-girder with deck less than 100 mm thick	1	External or Internal	2.70	2.70	0
	2	External or Internal	2.80	2.80	0
	3	External or Internal	2.80	2.80	0
	4 or more	External or Internal	2.80	2.80	0
Type C steel-grid-deck-on-girder with deck 100 mm thick or thicker	1	External or Internal	3.60	3.60	0
	2	External or Internal	3.70	3.70	0
	3	External or Internal	3.70	3.70	0
	4 or more	External or Internal	3.70	3.70	0
Type C with wood plank deck	1	External or Internal	2.40	2.40	0
	2	External or Internal	2.40	2.40	0
	3	External or Internal	2.40	2.40	0
	4 or more	External or Internal	2.40	2.40	0
Type H sawn wood stringer bridge	1	External or Internal	3.60	—	0
	2	External or Internal	3.70	—	0
	3 or more	External Internal	3.70 3.80	— —	0 0
Type H stress-laminated wood deck bridge spanning longitudinally	1	External or Internal	$3.10 + 0.08L$	$3.10 + 0.08L$	0
	2 or more	External or Internal	$3.40 + 0.07L$	$3.40 + 0.07L$	0
Type H longitudinal nail-laminated wood deck bridge	1 or more	External or Internal	1.70	—	0

(Continued)

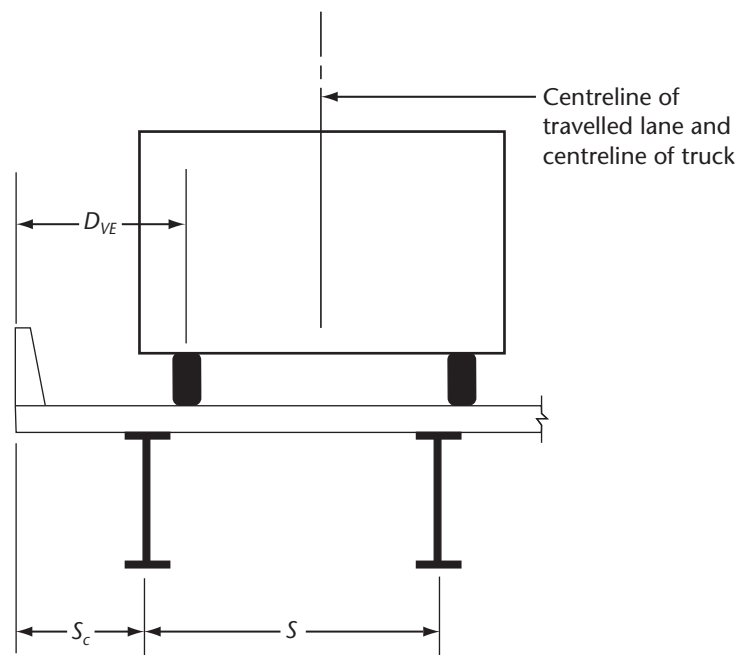
**Table 5.4 (Concluded)**

Bridge type (see Clause 5.1)	No. of design lanes	Portion	F, m		C <sub>f</sub> , %
			3 m < L ≤ 10 m	L > 10 m	
Type H longitudinal laminates of wood-concrete composite deck bridge	1	External or Internal	3.20	3.20	0
	2	External or Internal	3.30	3.30	0
	3	External or Internal	3.30	3.30	0
	4 or more	External or Internal	3.30	3.30	0

\*For girder bridges with laminated wood decks not 140 or 290 mm thick, linear interpolation based on the values for 140 and 290 mm decks shall be used.

**Table 5.5**  
**C<sub>e</sub> for longitudinal bending moments in shallow superstructures**  
**corresponding to the fatigue and vibration limit state**  
 (See Clause 5.7.1.2.2.2.)

Bridge type (see Clause 5.1)	No. of design lanes	Portion	C <sub>e</sub> , %	
			3 m < L ≤ 20 m	L > 20 m
Type C slab-on-girder	1	External	0	0
		Internal	0	0
	2	External	$30(D_{VE}-1)[1+0.4(D_{VE}-1)^2]$	$30(D_{VE}-1)\left[1+\frac{160(D_{VE}-1)^2}{L^2}\right]$
		Internal	0	0
	3	External	$26(D_{VE}-1)[1+0.4(D_{VE}-1)^2]$	$26(D_{VE}-1)\left[1+\frac{160(D_{VE}-1)^2}{L^2}\right]$
		Internal	0	0
4 or more	External	$26(D_{VE}-1)[1+0.4(D_{VE}-1)^2]$	$26(D_{VE}-1)\left[1+\frac{160(D_{VE}-1)^2}{L^2}\right]$	
	Internal	0	0	
Other types	1 or more	External or Internal	0	0



**Figure 5.1**  
 **$D_{VE}$  for slab-on-girder bridges**  
 (See Clause 5.7.1.2.2.2.)

△

### 5.7.1.3 Longitudinal bending moments in multi-spine bridges

#### 5.7.1.3.1

If all of the applicable conditions listed in Clause 5.7.1.1 are satisfied, the simplified method specified in Clause 5.7.1.3.2 may be used for multi-spine bridges.

#### 5.7.1.3.2

The value of  $\beta$  shall be calculated as follows:

$$\beta = \pi \left[ \frac{B}{L} \right] \left[ \frac{D_x}{D_{xy}} \right]^{0.5}$$

where

$B$  = for ultimate and serviceability limit states, the width of the bridge  
 = for the fatigue limit state, the width of the bridge, but not greater than three times the spine spacing,  $S$

$D_x$  = total bending stiffness,  $EI$ , of the bridge cross-section divided by the width of the bridge

$D_{xy}$  = total torsional stiffness,  $GJ$ , of the bridge cross-section divided by the width of the bridge

The longitudinal bending moment per spine shall be calculated using the methods specified in Clause 5.7.1.2.1 for the ultimate and serviceability limit states and in Clause 5.7.1.2.2 for the fatigue limit state, except that  $S$  shall be taken as the centreline-to-centreline spacing of the spines and the applicable values of  $F$  and  $C_f$  shall be obtained from Table 5.6. No distinction shall be made between internal and external portions of the cross-section, and the value of  $C_e$  shall be taken as zero. At ultimate and serviceability limit states for bridges with more than four design lanes, the value of  $F$  shall be calculated as follows:

**5.7.1.5.2**

For bridges with up to four design lanes, the value of  $F$  for longitudinal vertical shear shall be obtained from Table 5.9. The method specified in Clause 5.7.1.4 for the applicable limit state shall be used, with  $S$  being the centreline-to-centreline spacing of spines and  $N$  the number of spines; the shear thus obtained shall be for one spine. The shear force determined for one spine shall be equally distributed to the two webs of the spine. The value of  $F_v$  for the purposes of this Clause shall be such that  $F_v$  is greater than or equal to  $F_m$ .

At ultimate and serviceability limit states for bridges with more than four design lanes, the value of  $F$  shall be calculated as follows:

$$F = F_4 \frac{nR_L}{2.80}$$

where

$F_4$  = value of  $F$  for four design lanes obtained from Table 5.9

**Table 5.9**  
 **$F$  for longitudinal vertical shear in multi-spine bridges**

(See Clause 5.7.1.5.2.)

Limit state	Number of design lanes	$F$ , m
ULS or SLS	2	7.2
	3	9.6
	4	11.2
FLS	2 or more	4.25

**5.7.1.6 Deck slab moments due to loads on the cantilever overhang****5.7.1.6.1 Transverse moments due to wheel loads on the cantilever overhang****Δ 5.7.1.6.1.1 Transverse moments in the cantilever overhang**

For a cantilever slab of constant or linearly varying thickness, the intensity of transverse moment  $M_y$  due to a concentrated load  $P$  shall be calculated as follows:

$$M_y = \frac{2PA}{\pi \left[ 1 + \left( \frac{Ax}{C-y} \right)^2 \right]^2}$$

where

$A$  = coefficient obtained from Figure 5.2

$C$  = transverse distance of the load from the supported edge of the cantilever slab

and  $x$  and  $y$  are the coordinates shown in Figure 5.2, with  $y$  less than  $C$ .

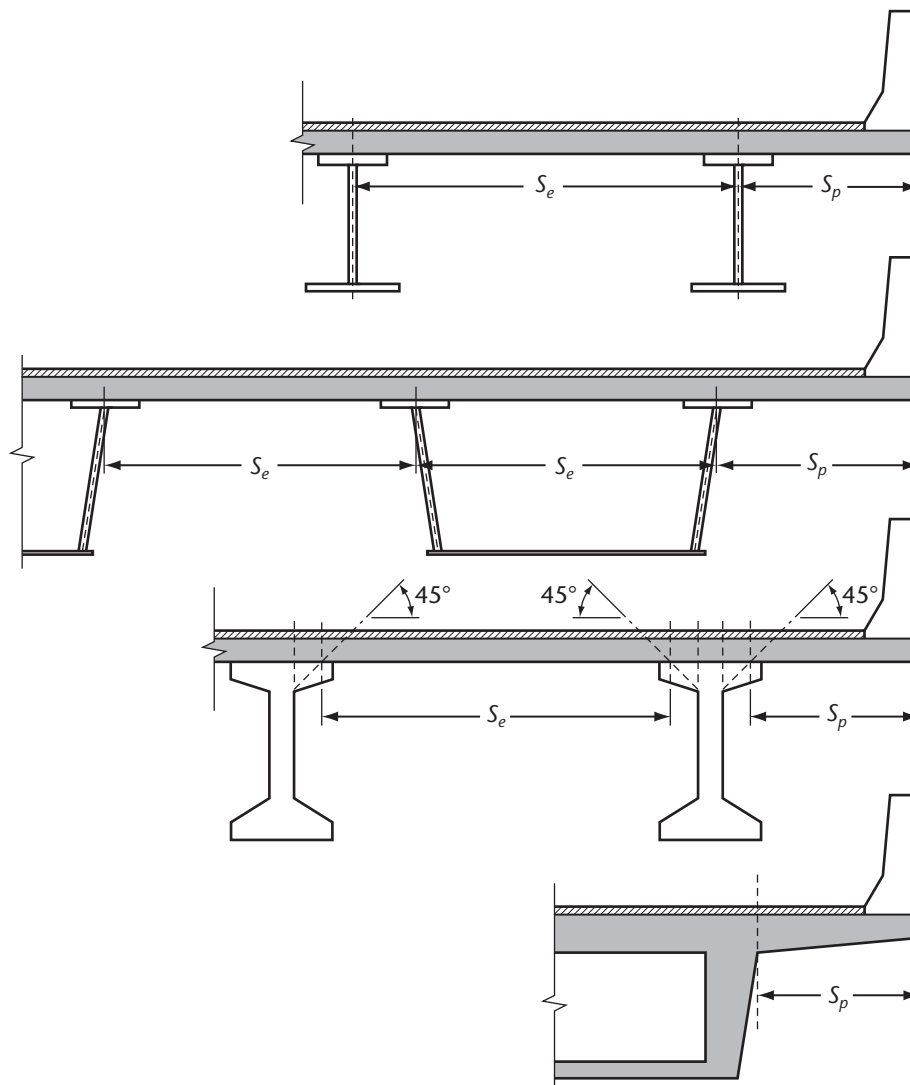
The relevant design moment intensity shall be obtained by multiplying  $M_y$  by  $(1 + DLA)$ .

For the design moment intensity due to the vertical axle loads of the CL-625 Truck, the effects of individual loads shall be obtained and superimposed or, alternatively, the design moment intensity due to the CL-625 Truck may be obtained directly, without calculation, from Table 5.10 for stiffened and unstiffened overhangs, as applicable (Table 5.10 includes the factor  $[1 + DLA]$ ). Edge stiffening is provided

by a continuous concrete barrier. Barriers shall be continuously longitudinally reinforced and have a stiffness equal to or greater than provided by New Jersey barriers.

For those portions of the cantilever slab that are within a distance  $S_p$  of a transverse free edge of the slab, the transverse moment intensity shall be assumed to be  $2M_y$  unless a more rigorous analysis is used.

$S_p$  is the transverse distance measured from the free edge of the cantilever overhang to the supported edge. The supported edge may be determined from Figure 5.1A for different types of superstructures.

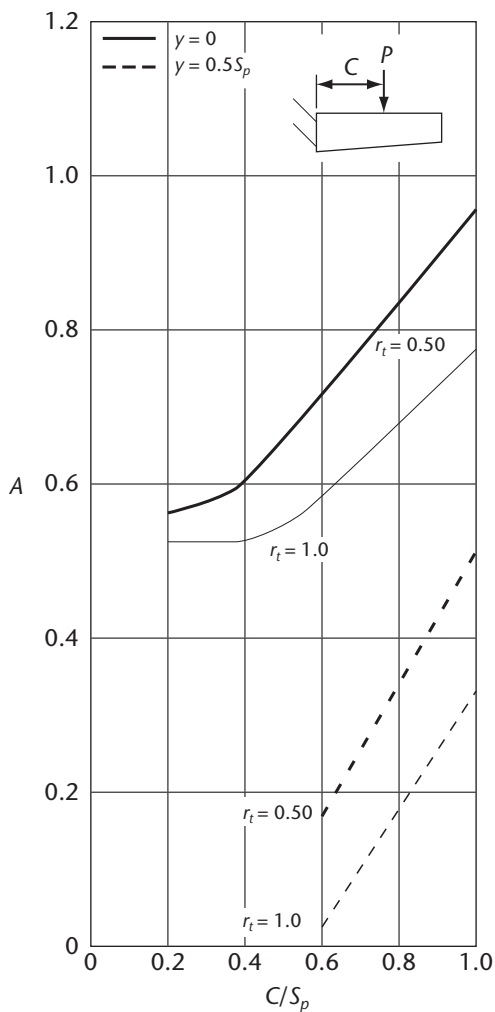
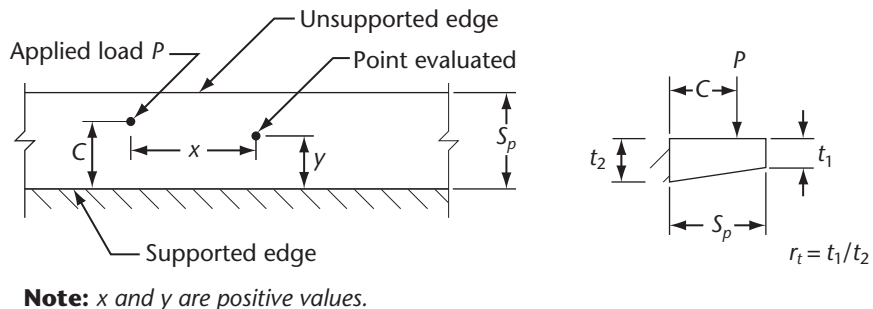


△

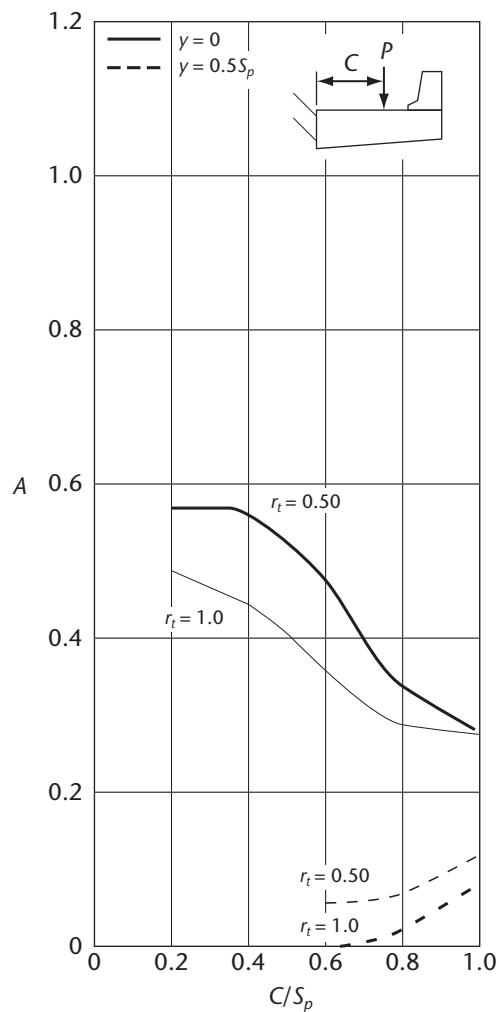
**Figure 5.1A**  
**Definition of  $S_p$  and  $S_e$**   
 (See Clauses 5.7.1.6.1.1 and 5.7.1.7.1.)

#### 5.7.1.6.1.2 Transverse moments in the interior panel next to the cantilever overhang

In the absence of a more refined method of analysis, the transverse moments in the interior panel next to the cantilever overhang may be assumed to vary linearly from the values calculated in accordance with Clause 5.7.1.6.1.1 at the root of the cantilever overhang to zero at the girder next to the exterior girder.



**(a) Slab without edge stiffening**



**(b) Slab with edge stiffening**

**Note:** For  $r_t < 0.5$ , use refined analysis.

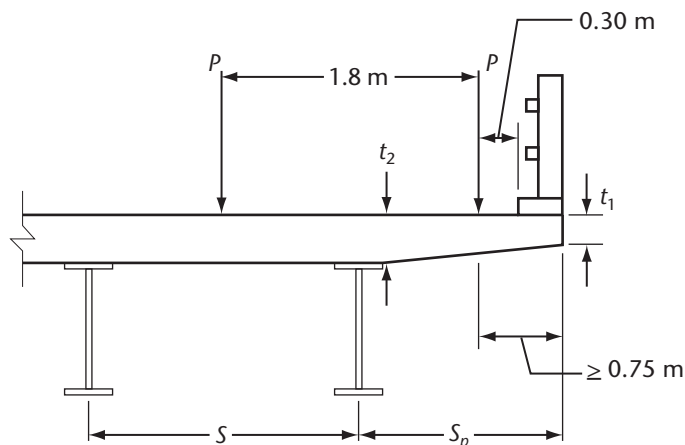
Δ

**Figure 5.2**  
**Calculation of A**  
(See Clause 5.7.1.6.1.1.)

△

**Table 5.10**  
**Maximum cantilever moments,  $M_y$ , due to unfactored**  
**CL-625 Truck wheel loads (DLA included), kN·m/m**  
 (See Clause 5.7.1.6.1.1.)

$S_p$ , m	Unstiffened edge			Stiffened edge		
	Max. $M_y$ in kN·m/m			Max. $M_y$ in kN·m/m		
	$r_t = 1.00$	$r_t = 0.75$	$r_t = 0.5$	$r_t = 1.00$	$r_t = 0.75$	$r_t = 0.5$
1.00	41	43	44	37	41	45
1.50	43	47	51	34	37	41
2.00	53	57	60	35	39	43
2.50	60	65	70	37	40	43
3.00	92	99	107	70	74	77

**Notes:**(1) Values obtained for  $y = 0$ ,  $C = S_p - 0.75$ .(2)  $r_t = t_1/t_2$ .

△

**Figure 5.3**  
**Notation for cantilever moments**  
 (See Table 5.10.)

### 5.7.1.6.2 Local longitudinal moment in cantilever slabs (main reinforcement parallel to traffic)

For longitudinal cantilever spans not longer than 3 m, the maximum intensity of local longitudinal moment,  $M_x$ , in kN·m/m, shall be calculated as follows:

$$M_x = PC/F$$

where

$P$  = 87.5 kN wheel load of the CL-W Truck

$C$  = longitudinal distance of  $P$  from the line of transverse support, m

$F$  =  $0.35C + 1.00$  (but shall not exceed 2.10 m)

The relevant design moment shall be obtained by multiplying  $M_x$  by  $(1 + DLA)$ .



For longitudinal cantilever spans longer than 3 m, the methods specified in Clause 5.7.1.2.1 shall be used, with the span length,  $L$ , being taken as twice the cantilever span. The live loading to be used shall be in accordance with Clause 3.8.4.3(c).

### 5.7.1.6.3 Transverse moments in cantilever slabs due to railing loads

In determining transverse moments in cantilever slabs resulting from the barrier or railing loads specified in Clause 3.8.8.1 and applied in accordance with Clause 12.4.3.5, the method of analysis shall be

- (a) a refined method in accordance with Clause 5.9; or
- (b) yield line theory.

### 5.7.1.7 Transverse bending moments in decks

#### Δ 5.7.1.7.1 Concrete decks slabs supported on longitudinal girders

Concrete deck slabs shall be analyzed for positive and negative bending moments resulting from loads applied on the slabs. The analysis shall consider the bending moments induced in the longitudinal direction that agree with the assumptions used in the analysis of the transverse bending moments. The cantilever portions of concrete deck slabs shall be analyzed for transverse negative bending moments resulting from loads on the cantilever portions of the slabs or horizontal loads on barriers and railings. The cantilever portions of concrete deck slabs may be analyzed using Clause 5.7.1.6.

Concrete deck slabs (cantilever portions that are proportioned in accordance with the empirical design method of Clause 8.18.4 for the CL-625 Truck) need not be analyzed for transverse bending moments due to live load.

Concrete deck slabs that are supported on longitudinal girders may be analyzed for transverse bending using the simplified elastic method in which the maximum unfactored transverse moment intensity in the portion of the deck slab between the outer girders due to the CL-625 Truck shall be determined as follows:

- (a) Except for portions of the deck slab within 1 m of a free edge, the deck slab shall be designed for an unfactored transverse live load moment intensity as follows:
  - (i) for simple span deck slabs:  $(S_e + 0.6)P/10$  kN•m/m, where  $S_e$  is the equivalent transverse span in metres, which can be determined from Figure 5.1A for different types of superstructures.  $P$  is 87.5 kN, the maximum wheel load of the CL-625 Truck; and
  - (ii) for deck slabs continuous over three or more supports, the maximum bending moment, either positive or negative, shall be assumed to be 80% of that determined for a simple span. These moments shall be increased by the dynamic load allowance for a single axle, as specified in Clause 3.8.4.5.3.
- (b) The portion of a deck slab within 1 m of a transverse free edge shall be reinforced to twice the level of the transverse reinforcement in the other portions of the deck slab unless equivalent local stiffening by diaphragms is provided in accordance with a requirement in another Section of this Code.
- (c) The longitudinal moment intensity for distribution of wheel loads to be used with the transverse moment intensity specified in Item (a) shall be taken as  $120/(S_e^{0.5})\%$  (but not to exceed 67% of the maximum transverse moment intensity) and shall be applied as a positive moment that produces tension in the bottom portion of the deck slab. The longitudinal reinforcement necessary to resist the longitudinal moment shall be used in the centre half of the span. The percentage may be reduced by 50% in the end quarters of the span.

### 5.7.1.7.2 Steel grid decks

#### 5.7.1.7.2.1 General

Transverse bending moments due to live load in steel grid decks shall be determined as specified in this Clause and Clauses 5.7.1.7.2.2 and 5.7.1.7.2.3.

The grid floor shall be designed as continuous. For concrete-filled floors, moments may be determined in accordance with Clause 5.7.1.7.1 using the simplified elastic method for concrete decks.

The requirements for load distribution specified in Clauses 5.7.1.7.2.2 and 5.7.1.7.2.3 assume that the floor is composed of main elements that span between girders, stringers, or cross-beams, and of secondary elements that are capable of transferring load between the main elements. Reinforcement for secondary elements shall consist of bars or shapes welded to the main steel.

#### **5.7.1.7.2.2 Decks filled with concrete**

Floors filled with concrete that span perpendicular to the direction of traffic may be analyzed using the elastic method for concrete deck design for load distribution and moment calculation.

Floors that span longitudinally shall be designed for longitudinal moments determined by distributing one line of truck wheel loads over a width  $E = 1.22 + 0.06S \leq 2.1$  m, where  $S$  is the span in metres.

Longitudinal edge beams shall be provided for all cantilevered slabs having main reinforcement parallel to traffic. The beam may consist of a slab section additionally reinforced, a beam integral with and deeper than the slab, or an integral reinforced section of slab and curb or slab and parapet.

The unfactored live load moment for the longitudinal edge beam shall equal  $0.1PS$  kN·m for simple spans and  $0.08PS$  kN·m for continuous spans, where  $S$  is the span, in metres, between points of support. Transverse cantilevered beams, diaphragms, or substructure locations are considered points of support.  $P$  is the maximum wheel load of the CL-625 Truck (87.5 kN), which shall be increased by  $(1 + DLA)$ .

The strength of the composite steel and concrete slab shall be determined using the "transformed area" method.

#### **5.7.1.7.2.3 Open decks**

A wheel load of one-tenth of the total weight of the CL-625 Truck (62.5 kN), further increased by  $(1 + DLA)$ , shall be distributed over a length and width equal to the wheel dimensions specified in Clause 3.8.3.2.

The strength of the section shall be determined using the moment of inertia method.

Edges of open grid steel decks shall be supported by suitable means as required. These supports may be longitudinal, transverse, or both, as required to support all edges properly.

#### **5.7.1.7.3 Transverse laminated wood decking on sawn timber stringers**

For bridges with sawn timber stringers, the maximum transverse moment intensity,  $M_y$ , due to the CL-625 Truck or to Level 2 or 3 evaluation trucks shall be calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} M_y &= 2.40 + 0.47L_s \text{ for bridges with one design lane} \\ &= 2.19 + 0.56L_s \text{ for bridges with more than one design lane} \end{aligned}$$

In these equations,  $L_s$ , the stringer span, is in metres and  $M_y$  is in kN·m/m.

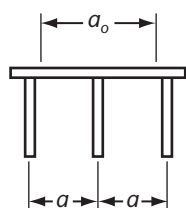
#### **5.7.1.7.4 Transverse stress-laminated wood deck-on-girders**

For bridges with stress-laminated wood decks, the transverse moment in the decking shall be calculated by assuming that a transverse line of wheels is sustained uniformly by a transverse strip of the decking of a width,  $D_t$ , measured in the longitudinal direction of the bridge span, with  $D_t = 0.30 + 0.4S$  for decks with edge stiffening at the transverse free edges, and in which the flexural rigidity of the stiffening beam is greater than or equal to that of a transverse strip of the decking with a width, measured in the longitudinal direction of the bridge span, of 0.25 m. In this equation  $D_t$  and  $S$  are in metres and  $S$  is the girder spacing. If the stiffening beam is absent or has a flexural rigidity less than specified in this Clause,  $D_t = 0.30 + 0.14S$  shall be used.

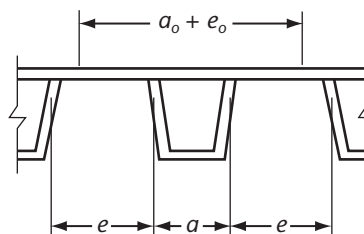
#### **5.7.1.7.5 Transverse nail-laminated wood deck-on-girders**

Transverse bending moments due to live load on transverse nail-laminated wood deck-on-girders shall be determined by distributing a wheel load over a width of 0.4 m plus the thickness of the wearing surface.

**Table 5.11**  
**Effective deck plate width for a longitudinal rib**  
(See Clause 5.8.2.2.1.)



**Effective width =  $a_o$**



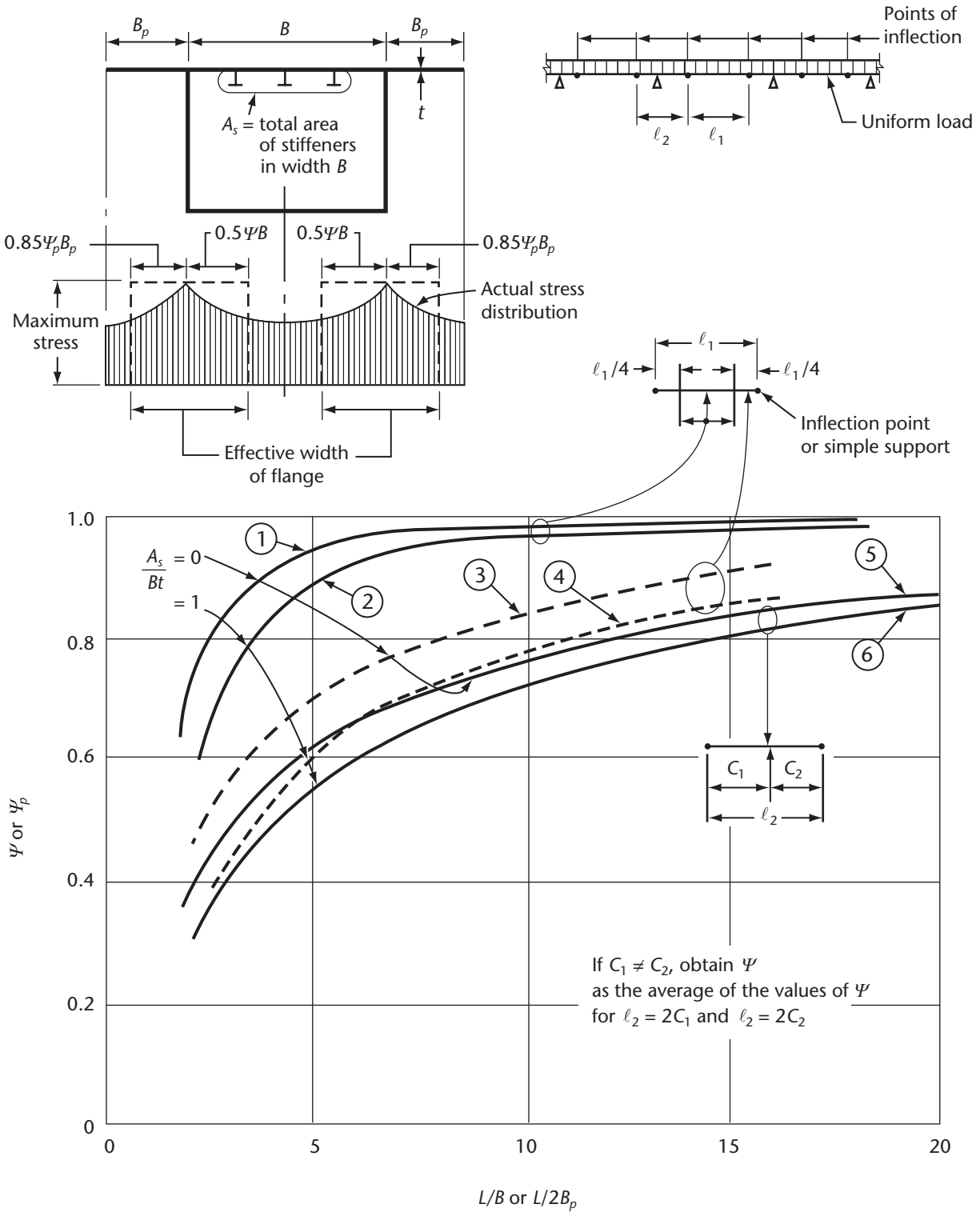
**Effective width =  $a_o + e_o$**

Rib section properties for calculation of deck rigidity and flexural effects due to dead load	$a_o = a$	$a_o + e_o = a + e$
Rib section properties for calculation of flexural effects due to wheel loads	$a_o = 1.1a$	$a_o + e_o = 1.3(a + e)$

**5.8.2.2.2 Longitudinal girders and transverse beams**

The effective width of the deck acting as the top flange of a longitudinal superstructure component or transverse beam may be determined using an accepted method of analysis or may be taken as shown in Figure 5.6.

The effective span,  $L$ , shown as  $l_1$  and  $l_2$  in Figure 5.6 shall be taken as the actual span for simple spans and as the distance between points of dead load contraflexure for continuous spans.



Δ

**Figure 5.6**  
**Effective width of orthotropic deck**  
 (See Clause 5.8.2.2.2.)

#### **5.11.1.4 Damping**

Equivalent viscous damping may be used to represent energy dissipation.

#### **5.11.1.5 Natural frequencies**

For the purpose of Clause 5.11.2, and unless otherwise specified by the Regulatory Authority, elastic undamped natural modes and frequencies of vibration shall be used. For the purpose of Clause 5.11.4 and Section 4, all relevant damped modes and frequencies shall be considered.

### **5.11.2 Elastic dynamic responses**

#### **5.11.2.1 Vehicle-induced vibrations**

Vehicle-induced vibrations shall be accounted for by applying a dynamic load allowance, i.e., an equivalent static load equal to a fraction of the applied live load. The dynamic load allowance shall be as specified in Clause 3.8.4.5.

#### **5.11.2.2 Wind-induced vibrations**

In accordance with Clauses 3.10.4.1 and 3.10.4.2, wind-sensitive structures shall be analyzed for dynamic effects such as buffeting by turbulent or gusting winds and unstable wind–structure interaction such as vortex shedding, galloping, and flutter.

Slender or torsionally flexible structures shall be analyzed for lateral buckling, excessive thrust, and divergence.

Oscillatory deformations under wind that could lead to excessive stress levels, structural fatigue, and user inconvenience shall be avoided. Bridge decks, cable stays, and hanger cables shall be protected against excessive vortex and against oscillations induced by wind and rain. Where practical, the employment of dampers shall be considered to control excessive dynamic responses. Where dampers or shape modification are not practical, the structural system shall be changed to achieve such control.

### **5.11.3 Inelastic-dynamic responses**

#### **5.11.3.1 General**

Energy dissipation by one or more of the following mechanisms during a major earthquake or ship collision may be taken into account:

- (a) elastic or inelastic deformation of the object that could collide with the structure;
- (b) inelastic deformation of the structure and its attachments;
- (c) permanent displacements of the masses of the structure and its attachments; and
- (d) inelastic deformation of special-purpose mechanical energy dissipaters.

#### **5.11.3.2 Plastic hinges and yield lines**

For the purpose of analysis, energy absorbed by inelastic deformation in a structural component may be assumed to be concentrated in plastic hinges and yield lines. The location of these sections may be established by successive approximation to obtain a lower bound solution for the energy absorbed. For these sections, moment-rotation hysteresis curves may be determined using verified analytic material models.

### **5.11.4 Analysis for collision loads**

Where permitted by Section 3, dynamic analysis of ship collision may be replaced by an equivalent static elastic analysis. Where an inelastic analysis is specified, the effect of other loads that could be present shall be considered.

### **5.11.5 Seismic analysis**

The minimum analysis requirements for seismic effects shall be as specified in Clauses 4.4.5, 4.5, and 4.11.5.

## 5.12 Stability and magnification of force effects

### 5.12.1 General

Stability effects are divided into two categories: member stability and structural stability. The stability of individual members, of the components of structural assemblies, and of structural systems shall be considered in the analysis. Stability analyses of structural assemblies and individual members shall be performed as specified in the clauses of Sections 8 to 10 and 16 that apply to the material(s) used for the members.

### 5.12.2 Member stability analysis for magnification of member bending moments

Member stability analysis shall be performed in order to account for

- (a) the interaction between axial compression forces and bending moments or out-of-straightness of a member; and
- (b) the possible increase of the bending moment magnitude between the two ends of a member.

Each member shall be considered individually.

### Δ 5.12.3 Structural stability analysis for lateral sway

Structural stability analysis shall be performed to account for gravity loads undergoing lateral sway arising from horizontal loads or out-of-plumbness of the structure. This structural analysis shall encompass all members or structural components resisting the sway.

In lieu of a more refined second-order analysis, the following equations may be used:

$$M_e = M_{ns} + \delta_s M_s$$

where

$M_e$  = moment at the end of an individual compression member

$M_{ns}$  = moment at the end of a compression member due to loads that cause no appreciable sway, calculated using first-order elastic analysis

$M_s$  = moment at the end of a compression member due to loads that cause appreciable sway, calculated using first-order elastic analysis

$\delta_s$  = moment magnification factor accounting for second-order effects of vertical load acting on a structure in a laterally displaced configuration

Second-order effects may be neglected if  $\delta_s \leq 1.05$ .

The moment magnification factor,  $\delta_s$ , may be calculated by one of the two following methods:

#### Method I

$$\delta_s = \frac{1}{1 - \frac{\sum P_f}{\phi_m \sum P_c}}$$

where

$\sum P_f$  = summation of all vertical loads on the sway-resisting columns

$\sum P_c$  = summation of all column-buckling loads in the sway-resisting system

$\phi_m$  = 0.75 for concrete elements

= 1.0 for structural steel elements

$P_c$  shall be calculated similarly to  $P_c$  in Clause 8.8.5.3 for concrete elements and to  $C_e$  in Clause 10.9.4.2 for steel elements.

**Method II**

$$\delta_s = \frac{1}{1 - \frac{\sum P_f}{\phi_m \sum (S_s h)}}$$

where

$\sum P_f$  = summation of all vertical loads on the sway-resisting columns

$S_s$  = lateral stiffness of sway-resisting element

$h$  = height of associated sway-resisting element

$\phi_m$  = 0.75 for concrete elements

= 1.0 for structural steel elements

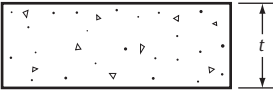
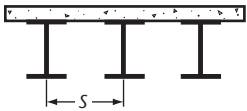
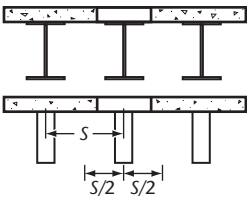
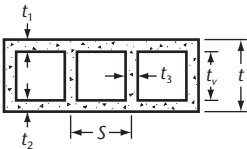
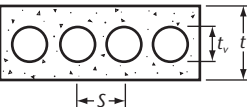
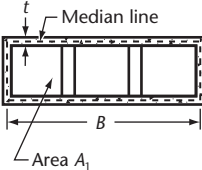
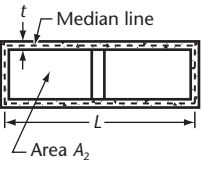
**5.12.4 Structural stability analysis for assemblies of individual members**

The structural stability of an assembly of individual members shall be considered for the condition of the buckling of such an assembly acting as a whole.



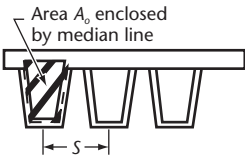


**Table A5.2.2**  
**Expressions for structural parameters**  
(See Clause A5.2.1.3.)

Bridge type and transverse section	Structural parameters				
	$i_L$	$i_T$	$j_L$	$j_T$	$s_v$
Slab 	$\frac{t^3}{12(1-\nu^2)}$	$\frac{t^3}{12(1-\nu^2)}$	$\frac{t^3}{6}$	$\frac{t^3}{6}$	May be ignored
Non-composite slab-on-girder 	$\frac{t^3}{12} + \frac{I_{xt}}{S}$ where $I_{xt}$ = transformed moment of inertia of the girder about its own x-axis	$\frac{t^3}{12(1-\nu^2)}$	$\frac{t^3}{6}$	$\frac{t^3}{6}$	May be ignored
Composite slab-on-girder 	$\frac{I_x}{S}$ where $I_x$ = the combined transformed moment of inertia of slab portion located in width S	$\frac{t^3}{12(1-\nu^2)}$	$\frac{t^3}{6} + \frac{J}{S}$ where $J$ = transformed torsional inertia of the girder multiplied by $n_g = 0.88n$ for steel portions	$\frac{t^3}{6}$	May be ignored
Voided slab with rectangular voids 	$\frac{t^3 - t_v^3}{12}$	$\frac{t^3 - t_v^3}{12}$	$\frac{2A_1^2}{B \sum \frac{ds}{t}}$	$\frac{2A_2^2}{L \sum \frac{ds}{t}}$	*
Voids with circular voids 	$\frac{t^3}{12} - \frac{\pi t_v^4}{64S}$	$\frac{F_1 t^3}{12}$ ( $F_1$ from Figure A5.2.1)	$\frac{F_2 t^3}{6}$ ( $F_2$ from Figure A5.2.1)	$\frac{F_2 t^3}{6}$ ( $F_2$ from Figure A5.2.1)	May be ignored
			Intermediate webs ignored 	Intermediate diaphragm, if any, ignored 	

(Continued)

**Table A5.2.2 (Concluded)**

Bridge type and transverse section	Structural parameters				
	$i_L$	$i_T$	$j_L$	$j_T$	$s_v$
Multi-spine girder 	$\frac{I_x}{S}$ where $I_x$ = the combined transformed moment of inertia of slab portion located in width $S$	$\frac{t^3}{12(1-\nu^2)}$ for the portion of the deck between the spines. The value of $i_T$ for the portion of the deck included in the spine is calculated by considering the total transverse stiffness of the spine, including that of the bracing and diaphragms within the box.	$\frac{4A_0^2}{S \sum \frac{ds}{n_g t}}$ where $n_g = 1.0$ for concrete portions $= 0.88n$ for steel portions	$\frac{t^3}{6}$	May be ignored for slab between spines. See note (*) for portion within spine. The stiffness of internal braces in spines may be included.

$$* s_v = \left[ \frac{t_1^3 + t_2^3}{S^2} \right] \frac{E}{G} \left[ \frac{t_3^3 S}{S t_3^3 + (t_1^3 + t_2^3) \left[ \frac{t + t_v}{2} \right]} \right] \text{ for voided slabs with rectangular voids.}$$

**Note:** All parameters are in terms of deck slab concrete units.

**Table A5.2.3**  
**Torsional constant,  $K$ , for rectangular sections where  $a \geq b$**   
 (See Clause A5.2.1.3 and Table A5.2.4.)

$a/b$	1	1.2	1.5	2.0	2.5	3.0	4.0	5.0	10.0	$\geq 420$
$K$	0.141	0.166	0.196	0.229	0.249	0.263	0.281	0.291	0.312	0.333

## 8.4.4 Anchorages, mechanical connections, and ducts

### 8.4.4.1 Anchorages for post-tensioning tendons

When tested in an unbonded condition, anchorages for post-tensioning tendons shall develop at least 95% of the specified tensile strength of the tendons without exceeding the anticipated set. After tensioning and seating, anchorages shall sustain applied loads without slippage, distortion, or other changes that result in loss of prestress. The dimensions and details of the anchorages, including any reinforcement immediately behind the anchorages, shall be based on the specified strength of the tendon and the specified strength of the concrete at transfer.

Anchorages for external unbonded post-tensioning tendons shall also meet Approved dynamic tests.

### 8.4.4.2 Anchorages for reinforcing bars

Mechanical anchorage devices shall be capable of developing the yield strength of the reinforcing bars without damage to the concrete.

### 8.4.4.3 Mechanical connections for post-tensioning tendons

When tested in an unbonded condition, couplers for post-tensioning tendons shall develop 95% of the specified tensile strength of the tendons without exceeding the anticipated set. Couplers for external unbonded post-tensioning tendons shall also meet Approved dynamic tests.

Couplers and their components shall be enclosed in housings. The housings shall be long enough to permit the necessary movements and shall be provided with fittings to allow complete grouting. Couplers shall not reduce the elongation at rupture below the requirements of the tendon itself. Couplers shall not be used at points of sharp tendon curvature or in the vicinity of points of maximum moments.

### 8.4.4.4 Mechanical connections for reinforcing bars

Mechanical connections for reinforcing bars shall develop, in tension or compression (as required), the greater of 120% of the specified yield strength of bars or 110% of the mean yield strength of the actual bars used to test the mechanical connection.

The total slip of the reinforcing bars within the splice sleeve of the connector after loading in tension to  $0.5f_y$  and relaxing to  $0.05f_y$  shall not exceed the following measured displacements between gauge points straddling the splice sleeve:

- (a) for bars sizes up to and including 45M: 0.25 mm; and
- (b) for 55M bars: 0.75 mm.

### 8.4.4.5 Ducts

#### 8.4.4.5.1 General

Sheaths for internal post-tensioning ducts shall be made of bright steel, galvanized steel, or plastic. The sheaths shall be corrugated and shall be non-reactive with concrete, tendons, and grout. The shape of corrugations shall be such that the sheaths can be completely filled with grout. Sheaths for external post-tensioning shall be made of plastic.

#### 8.4.4.5.2 Size

For single-strand or bar tendons, the inside diameter of the sheaths for post-tensioning ducts shall be at least 6 mm larger than the nominal diameter of the strand or bar. For multiple-strand tendons, the inside cross-sectional area of the sheath shall be at least twice the cross-sectional area of the prestressing tendon.

The inside diameter of a circular sheath or an equivalent diameter of a non-circular sheath shall not exceed 40% of the least gross concrete thickness at the duct.

#### 8.4.4.5.3 Steel sheaths

Sheaths shall be watertight under an internal pressure of 350 kPa. Rigid steel sheaths shall have a wall thickness of at least 0.6 mm and shall permit bending of the sheath to a minimum inside radius of

curvature of 9 m without distress. Semi-rigid steel sheaths shall have a wall thickness of at least 0.25 mm and shall permit the bending of the sheath to a minimum inside radius of curvature of 3.5 m without distress.

#### **8.4.4.5.4 Plastic sheaths**

Unless otherwise Approved, plastic sheaths, including their splices, shall be made of high-density polyethylene conforming to ASTM D 3350 Cell Classification 324420C, shall be vapour tight, and shall remain vapour tight after tendon installation and stressing. The polyethylene sheath shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D 2239.

Plastic sheaths shall not be used when the radius of curvature of the tendon is less than 10 m. The sheaths shall be capable of bending to the specified minimum radius of curvature without local buckling or damage. The sheath wall thickness shall be such that for the specified minimum radius of curvature the remaining wall thickness, after a tendon movement of 750 mm under a tendon stress of 80% of the specified strength, will not be less than 1 mm. For curved sheaths, the radial force exerted by a single strand on the sheath wall shall not exceed 40 kN/m.

The stiffness of plastic sheaths shall be such that

- (a) for sheaths with an inside diameter of 50 mm or less, a 3 m length supported at the ends will not deflect, under its own weight, more than 75 mm at room temperature (i.e., not less than 20 °C);
- (b) for sheaths with an inside diameter of more than 50 mm, a 6 m length supported at the ends will not deflect, under its own weight, more than 75 mm at room temperature; and
- (c) the sheath shall not dent more than 3 mm under a point load of 445 N applied through a 10M reinforcing bar between the corrugation ribs at room temperature.

Sheaths and their splices for external post-tensioning shall be smooth, seamless, and capable of withstanding a grouting pressure of at least 1000 kPa.

#### **8.4.4.5.5 Vents and drains**

Ducts shall be provided with vents and drains at appropriate locations.

#### **8.4.4.5.6 Ducts at deviators**

Within deviators, the sheaths for post-tensioning tendons shall consist of

- (a) galvanized steel pipe in accordance with ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, with a wall thickness not less than 3 mm, and bent to conform to the tendon alignment; or
- (b) an Approved sheath detail.

#### **Δ 8.4.4.6 Anchor rods and studs**

Anchor rods and studs shall comply with Section 10.

### **8.4.5 Grout**

#### **8.4.5.1 Post-tensioning**

Unless otherwise Approved, grout for post-tensioning ducts shall comply with CAN/CSA-A23.1 and have a compressive strength of at least 35 MPa at 28 days.

#### **8.4.5.2 Other applications**

Grout for other applications shall be Approved.

### **8.4.6 Material resistance factors**

The material resistance factors specified in Table 8.1 shall be used to calculate the factored resistance

- (e) The transformed area of bonded reinforcement may be included in the calculation of section properties. Before grouting, the loss of concrete area due to post-tensioning ducts, coupler sheaths, or transition trumpets shall be considered, except where such loss of area is insignificant. The modular ratio,  $n$ , shall not be taken as less than 6. An effective modular ratio of  $2n$  may be used to transform the compression reinforcement for stress computations corresponding to permanent loads.

### 8.8.3 Assumptions for the ultimate limit states

In addition to the conditions of equilibrium and compatibility of strains, the calculations for the ultimate limit states shall be based on the material resistance factors specified in Clause 8.4.6 and the following shall apply to such calculations:

- (a) Strain in the concrete shall be assumed to vary linearly over the depth of the section, except for deep beams, which shall satisfy the requirements of Clause 8.10.
- (b) Strain changes in bonded reinforcement shall be assumed to be equal to strain changes in the surrounding concrete.
- (c) The maximum usable strain at the extreme concrete compression fibre shall be assumed to be 0.0035 unless the concrete is confined and a higher value of strain can be justified. In the latter case, a strain compatibility analysis shall be used.
- (d) Except for the strut-and-tie model of Clause 8.10, the stress in the reinforcement shall be taken as the value of the stress determined using strain compatibility based on a stress-strain curve representative of the steel reinforcement to be used, multiplied by  $\phi_s$  or  $\phi_p$ .
- (e) The tensile strength of the concrete shall be neglected in the calculation of the factored flexural resistance.
- (f) The relationship between concrete strain and the concrete compressive stress may be assumed to be rectangular, parabolic, or any other shape that results in a prediction of strength in substantial agreement with the results of comprehensive tests. In this regard, an equivalent rectangular concrete stress distribution may be used, i.e., a concrete stress of  $\alpha_1 \phi_c f'_c$  is uniformly distributed over an equivalent compression zone, bounded by the edges of the cross-section and a straight line parallel to the neutral axis at a distance  $a = \beta_1 c$  from the fibre of maximum compressive strain and the neutral axis,  $\alpha_1 = 0.85 - 0.0015f'_c \geq 0.67$  and  $\beta_1 = 0.97 - 0.0025f'_c \geq 0.67$ .

### 8.8.4 Flexural components

#### 8.8.4.1 Factored flexural resistance

The factored flexural resistance shall be calculated in accordance with Clause 8.8.3.

#### 8.8.4.2 Tendon stress at the ultimate limit states

The value of  $f_{ps}$  for components with bonded tendons shall be computed using a method based on strain compatibility and using stress-strain curves representative of the steel, except that if  $c/d_p$  is less than or equal to 0.5, the following expression may be used:

$$f_{ps} = f_{pu} (1 - k_p c/d_p)$$

where  $k_p$  is 0.3 for low-relaxation strands, 0.4 for smooth high-strength bars, and 0.5 for deformed high-strength bars, and the value of  $c$  shall be determined assuming a stress of  $f_{ps}$  in the tendons.

For components with unbonded tendons,  $f_{ps}$  shall be taken as  $f_{se}$  unless a detailed analysis accounting for deformations demonstrates that a higher value can be used.

External tendons shall be treated as unbonded tendons.

### 8.8.4.3 Minimum reinforcement

The total amount of reinforcement shall be such that the factored flexural resistance,  $M_r$ , of the component is at least 1.20 times the cracking moment. This requirement may be waived if the factored flexural resistance provided is at least one-third greater than the minimum resistance required for factored loads.

### 8.8.4.4 Cracking moment

A component shall be assumed to crack when the moment at a section is such that a tensile stress of  $f_{cr}$ , as specified in Clause 8.4.1.8, is induced in the concrete.

### 8.8.4.5 Maximum reinforcement

The amount of reinforcement provided shall be such that the factored flexural resistance,  $M_r$ , is developed with  $c/d$  not exceeding 0.5. This requirement may be waived if it is demonstrated to the satisfaction of the Regulatory Authority that the consequences of reinforcement not yielding are acceptable.

### Δ 8.8.4.6 Prestressed concrete stress limitations

The stresses in the concrete shall not exceed the following:

- (a) At transfer and during construction:
  - (i) compression:  $0.60f'_{ci}$ ;
  - (ii) tension in components without reinforcing bars in the tension zone:  $0.50f_{cri}$ . Where the calculated tensile stress exceeds  $0.50f_{cri}$ , reinforcing bars in which the tensile stress is assumed to be 240 MPa shall be provided to resist the total tensile force in the concrete, calculated on the basis of an uncracked section; and
  - (iii) tension at joints in segmental components:
    - (1) without reinforcing bars passing through the joint in the tension zone: zero; and
    - (2) with reinforcing bars passing through the joint in the tension zone:  $0.50f_{cri}$ .  
Where the calculated tensile stress is between zero and  $0.50f_{cri}$ , reinforcing bars in which the tensile stress is assumed to be 240 MPa shall be provided to resist the total tensile force in the concrete calculated on the basis of an uncracked section.
- (b) At the serviceability limit states, if the tension in the concrete exceeds  $f_{cr}$ , Clause 8.12 shall apply. Tension shall not be permitted across the joints of segmental components unless bonded reinforcing bars pass through the joints in the tensile zone.
- (c) In prestressed slabs with circular voids, the average compressive stress due to effective longitudinal prestress alone shall not exceed 6.5 MPa. In post-tensioned slabs with circular voids, the following shall apply:
  - (i) an effective transverse prestress shall be provided to give a compressive stress of 4.5 MPa in the concrete above the longitudinal voids; and
  - (ii) the thicknesses of the concrete above and below the voids shall not be less than 175 mm and 125 mm, respectively.

## 8.8.5 Compression components

### 8.8.5.1 General

The proportioning of cross-sections subject to combined flexure and axial compression shall be in accordance with Clause 8.8.3.

### 8.8.5.2 Slenderness effects

The proportioning of compression components shall be based on forces and moments determined from an analysis of the structure. Except as permitted by Clause 8.8.5.3, such an analysis shall include the influence of axial loads and variable moment of inertia on component stiffness and moments, the effect of deflections on the moments and forces, and the effects of the duration of the loads and prestressing forces.

### 8.9.3.8 Determination of $\varepsilon_x$

In lieu of more accurate calculations,  $\varepsilon_x$  shall be calculated as follows:

$$\varepsilon_x = \frac{M_f/d_v + V_f - V_p + 0.5N_f - A_{ps}f_{po}}{2(E_sA_s + E_pA_{ps})}$$

Evaluation of this equation shall be based on the following:

- $V_f$  and  $M_f$  are positive quantities and  $M_f$  shall not be less than  $(V_f - V_p)d_v$ .
- $N_f$  shall be taken as positive for tension and negative for compression. For rigid frames and rectangular culverts, the value of  $N_f$  used to determine  $\varepsilon_x$  may be taken as twice the compressive axial thrust calculated by elastic analysis.
- $A_s$  and  $A_{ps}$  are the areas of reinforcing bars and prestressing tendons in the half-depth of the section containing the flexural tension zone.
- $f_{po}$  may be taken as  $0.7f_{pu}$  for bonded tendons outside the transfer length and  $f_{pe}$  for unbonded tendons.
- In calculating  $A_s$ , the area of bars that terminate less than their development length from the section under consideration shall be reduced in proportion to their lack of full development.
- If the value of  $\varepsilon_x$  is negative, it shall be taken as zero or recalculated with the denominator replaced by  $2(E_sA_s + E_pA_{ps} + E_cA_{ct})$ . However,  $\varepsilon_x$  shall not be less than  $-0.20 \times 10^{-3}$ .
- For sections closer than  $d_v$  to the face of the support, the value of  $\varepsilon_x$  calculated at  $d_v$  from the face of the support may be used in evaluating  $\theta$  and  $\beta$ .
- If the axial tension is large enough to crack the flexural compression face of the section, the resulting increase in  $\varepsilon_x$  shall be taken into account. In lieu of more accurate calculations, the value calculated from the equation shall be doubled.
- $\theta$  and  $\beta$  may be determined from Clause 8.9.3.7 using a value of  $\varepsilon_x$  that is greater than that calculated from the equation in this Clause. However,  $\varepsilon_x$  shall not be greater than  $3.0 \times 10^{-3}$ .

### 8.9.3.9 Proportioning of transverse reinforcement

Near locations where the spacing,  $s$ , of the transverse reinforcement changes, the quantity  $A_v/s$  may be assumed to vary linearly over a length,  $h$ , centred on the location where the spacing changes.

### 8.9.3.10 Extension of longitudinal reinforcement

At every section, the longitudinal reinforcement shall be designed to resist the additional tensile forces caused by shear as specified in Clauses 8.9.3.11 and 8.9.3.12. Alternatively, for members not subjected to significant tension or torsion, these requirements may be satisfied by extending the flexural tension reinforcement a distance of  $d_v \cot \theta$  beyond the location required by flexure alone.

### 8.9.3.11 Longitudinal reinforcement on the flexural tension side

Longitudinal reinforcement on the flexural tension side shall be proportioned so that at all sections the factored resistance of the reinforcement, taking account of the stress that can be developed in this reinforcement, is greater than or equal to  $F_{lt}$ , calculated as follows:

$$F_{lt} = \frac{M_f}{d_v} + 0.5N_f + (V_f - 0.5V_s - V_p) \cot \theta$$

where  $M_f$  and  $V_f$  are taken as positive quantities and  $N_f$  is positive for axial tension and negative for axial compression. In this equation,  $d_v$  may be taken as the flexural lever arm at the factored resistance.

### 8.9.3.12 Longitudinal reinforcement on the flexural compression side

Longitudinal reinforcement on the flexural compression side of the section shall be proportioned so that the factored tensile resistance of this reinforcement, taking account of the stress that can be developed in this reinforcement, shall be greater than or equal to the force  $F_{lc}$ , calculated as follows:

$$F_{fc} = 0.5N_f + (V_f - 0.5V_s - V_p) \cot \theta - \frac{M_f}{d_v}$$

where  $M_f$  and  $V_f$  are taken as positive quantities and  $N_f$  is positive for axial tension and negative for axial compression.

### 8.9.3.13 Compression fan regions

In regions adjacent to maximum moment locations, the cross-sectional area of longitudinal reinforcement on the flexural tension side of the member need not exceed the cross-sectional area required to resist the maximum moment acting alone. This exception shall apply only when the support or the load at the maximum moment location introduces direct compression into the flexural compression face of the member and the member is not subject to significant torsion.

### 8.9.3.14 Anchorage of longitudinal reinforcement at exterior supports

At exterior direct-bearing supports, the longitudinal reinforcement on the flexural tension side for the member shall be capable of resisting a tensile force of  $(V_f - 0.5V_s - V_p) \cot \theta + 0.5N_f$ , where  $V_s$  is based on the transverse reinforcement provided within a length of  $d_v \cot \theta$  from the face of the support. However,  $V_s$  shall not be taken as greater than  $V_f$ . The tension force in the reinforcement shall be developed at the point where a line inclined at angle  $\theta$  to the longitudinal axis and extending from the inside edge of the bearing area intersects the centroid of the reinforcement.

### 8.9.3.15 Transverse reinforcement for combined shear and torsion

For sections subjected to combined shear and torsion, the transverse reinforcement provided shall be at least equal to the sum of that required for shear and that required for the coexisting torsion.

### 8.9.3.16 Transverse reinforcement for torsion

The amount of transverse reinforcement required for torsion shall be such that  $T_r$  is greater than or equal to  $T_f$ .

### 8.9.3.17 Factored torsional resistance

The value of  $T_r$  shall be calculated as follows:

$$T_r = 2A_o \frac{\phi_s A_t f_y}{s} \cot \theta$$

where  $A_o$  is taken as  $0.85A_{oh}$  and  $\theta$  is as specified in Clause 8.9.3.6 or 8.9.3.7.

### Δ 8.9.3.18 Cross-sectional dimensions to avoid crushing for combined shear and torsion

The cross-sectional dimensions to avoid crushing for combined shear and torsion shall be as follows:

(a) For box sections:

$$\frac{V_f - V_p}{b_v d_v} + \frac{T_f p_h}{1.7 A_{oh}^2} \leq 0.25 \phi_c f'_c$$

If the wall thickness of the box section is less than  $A_{oh}/p_h$ , the second term in this expression shall be replaced by  $T_f/(1.7 A_{oh} t)$ , where  $t$  is the wall thickness at the location where the stresses are being checked.

(b) For other sections:

$$\sqrt{\left[ \frac{V_f - V_p}{b_v d_v} \right]^2 + \left[ \frac{T_f p_h}{1.7 A_{oh}^2} \right]^2} \leq 0.25 \phi_c f'_c$$



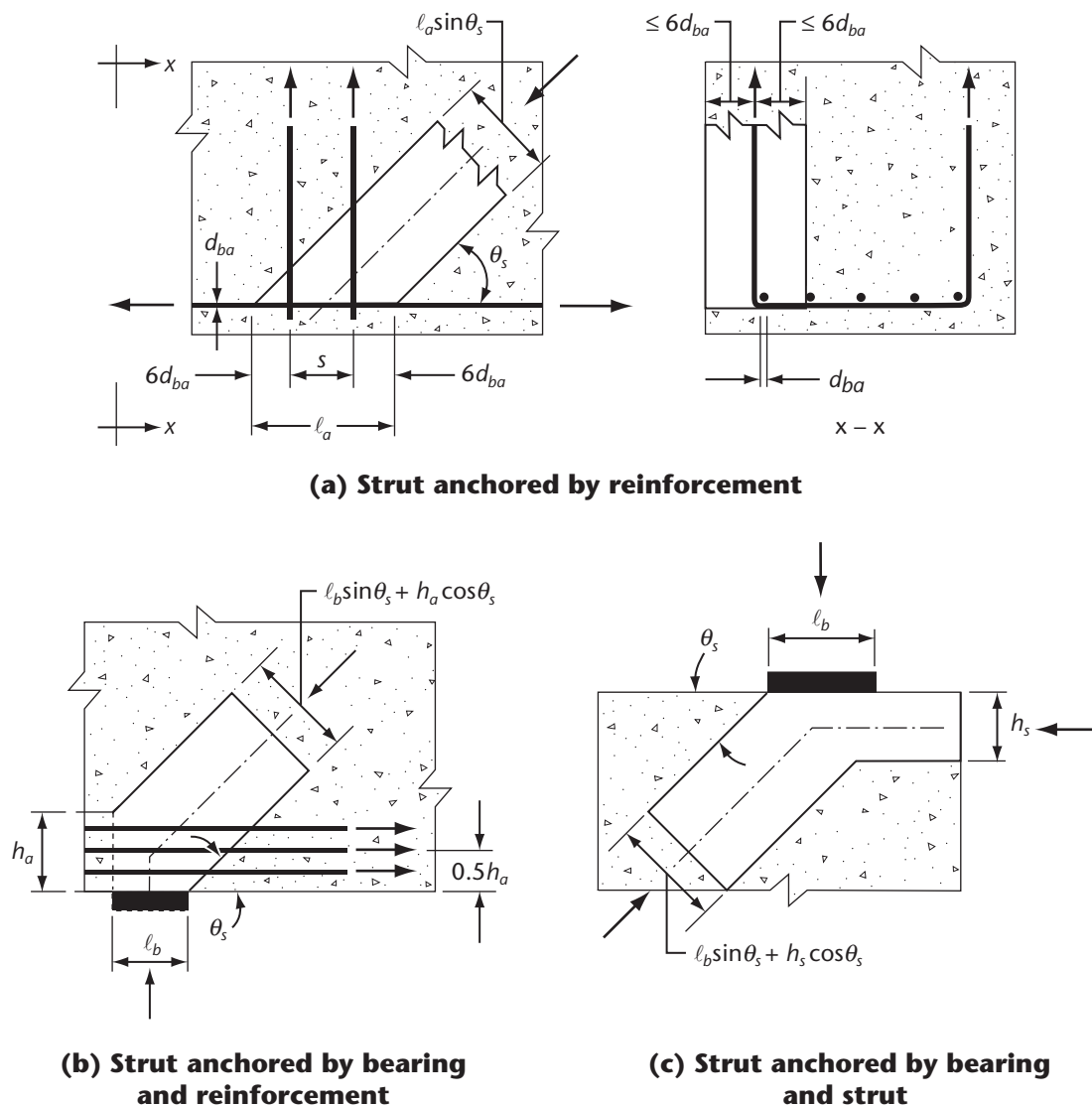
### 8.10.3 Proportioning of a compressive strut

#### 8.10.3.1 Strength of strut

The dimensions of the strut shall be large enough to ensure that the calculated compressive force in the strut does not exceed  $\phi_c A_{cs} f_{cu}$ , where  $A_{cs}$  and  $f_{cu}$  are determined in accordance with Clauses 8.10.3.2 and 8.10.3.3, respectively.

#### 8.10.3.2 Effective cross-sectional area of strut

The value of  $A_{cs}$  shall be calculated by considering both the influence of the anchorage conditions at the ends of the strut, as shown in Figure 8.4, and the available concrete area.



**Figure 8.4**  
**Influence of anchorage conditions on effective cross-sectional area of strut**  
(See Clause 8.10.3.2.)

### 8.10.3.3 Limiting compressive stress in strut

The value of  $f_{cu}$  shall be calculated as follows:

$$f_{cu} = \frac{f'_c}{0.8 + 170\varepsilon_1} \leq \alpha_1 f'_c$$

where  $\varepsilon_1$  is calculated as  $\varepsilon_s + (\varepsilon_s + 0.002) \cot^2 \theta_s$ , in which  $\theta_s$  is the smallest angle between the compressive strut and the adjoining tensile ties and  $\varepsilon_s$  is the tensile strain in the tensile tie inclined at  $\theta_s$  to the compressive strut.

### 8.10.3.4 Reinforced strut

If the compressive strut contains reinforcement that is parallel to the strut and has been detailed to develop its yield stress in compression, the calculated force in the strut shall not exceed  $\phi_c f_{cu} A_{cs} + \phi_s f_y A_{ss}$ . The strut shall be reinforced with lateral ties in accordance with Clause 8.14.4.3.

## 8.10.4 Proportioning of a tension tie

### 8.10.4.1 Strength of tie

The cross-sectional area of the reinforcement in a tension tie shall be large enough to ensure that the calculated tensile force in the tie does not exceed  $\phi_s f_y A_{st} + \phi_p f_{py} A_{ps}$ , where  $A_{st}$  is the cross-sectional area of the reinforcing bars in the tie and  $A_{ps}$  is the cross-sectional area of the tendons in the tie.

### 8.10.4.2 Anchorage of tie

The tension tie reinforcement shall be anchored so that it is capable of resisting the calculated tension in the reinforcement at the inner edge of the node region. For straight bars extending a distance  $x$  beyond the inner edge of the node region, where  $x$  is less than  $\ell_d$ , the calculated stress shall not exceed  $f_y(x/\ell_d)$ , where  $\ell_d$  is calculated in accordance with Clause 8.15.2.

## 8.10.5 Proportioning of node regions

### △ 8.10.5.1 Stress limits in node regions

Unless special confining reinforcement is provided, the calculated concrete compressive stress in the node regions shall not exceed the following (with  $\alpha_1$ , as specified in Clause 8.8.3):

- (a)  $\alpha_1 \phi_c f'_c$  in node regions bounded by compressive struts and bearing areas;
- (b)  $0.88 \alpha_1 \phi_c f'_c$  in node regions anchoring a tension tie in only one direction; and
- (c)  $0.76 \alpha_1 \phi_c f'_c$  in node regions anchoring tension ties in more than one direction.

### 8.10.5.2 Satisfying stress limits in node regions

The stress limits in node regions may be considered satisfied if the following two conditions are met:

- (a) the bearing stress in the node regions produced by concentrated loads or reactions does not exceed the stress limits specified in Clause 8.10.5.1; and
- (b) the tensile tie reinforcement is uniformly distributed over an effective area of concrete at least equal to the tensile tie force divided by the stress limits specified in Clause 8.10.5.1.

## 8.10.6 Crack control reinforcement

Except for slabs and footings, components or regions that have been designed in accordance with Clauses 8.10.1 to 8.10.5 shall contain an orthogonal grid of reinforcing bars near each face. The spacing of this reinforcement shall not exceed 300 mm. The ratio of reinforcement area to gross concrete area shall not be less than 0.003, but the reinforcement need not be more than 1500 mm<sup>2</sup>/m in each face and in each direction. If located within the tension tie, the crack control reinforcement may also be considered tension tie reinforcement.

### **8.11.2.3 Corrosion protection for reinforcement, ducts, and metallic components**

Unless otherwise Approved, steel reinforcement, anchorages, and mechanical connections specified for use within 75 mm of a surface exposed to moisture containing de-icing chemicals shall have an Approved protective coating, be protected by other Approved methods of corrosion protection or prevention, or be of non-corrosive materials. Exposed inserts, fasteners, and plates shall be protected from corrosion by Approved methods. Sheaths for internal post-tensioning ducts specified for use within 100 mm of a surface subject to moisture containing de-icing chemicals shall be made of non-corroding material or with an Approved coating. The ends of pretensioning strands shall be protected by Approved methods when they are not encased in concrete.

### **8.11.2.4 Sulphate-resistant cements**

Sulphate-resistant cement shall be specified for concrete in deep foundation units, footings, buried structures made of reinforced concrete, or other substructure components exposed to soils or water to an extent sufficient to cause a strong sulphate attack on concrete. Protection against sulphate attack shall be in accordance with CAN/CSA-A23.1.

### **8.11.2.5 Alkali-reactive aggregates**

Aggregates for concrete shall be tested for susceptibility to alkali aggregate reaction. The evaluation and use of aggregates susceptible to alkali aggregate reaction shall be in accordance with CAN/CSA-A23.1 and CAN/CSA-A23.2-27A.

### **8.11.2.6 Drip grooves**

Continuous drip grooves shall be formed on the underside of the bridge deck. The grooves shall be located close to the fascia and shall have minimum dimensions for depth and width of 20 mm and 50 mm, respectively. At expansion joints without joint armouring, the end of the concrete deck slab shall be provided with a drip groove. If joint armouring is provided, it shall cover the end of the deck slab and extend at least 50 mm below the concrete in order to form a drip projection.

### **8.11.2.7 Waterproofing**

Unless otherwise Approved, concrete decks that are expected to be salted for winter maintenance or are exposed to a marine environment shall be waterproofed with an Approved waterproofing system.

Δ

**Table 8.5**  
**Minimum concrete covers and tolerances**  
 (See Clause 8.11.2.2.)

Environmental exposure	Component	Reinforcement/ steel ducts	Concrete covers and tolerances	
			Cast-in-place concrete, mm	Precast concrete, mm
De-icing chemicals; spray or surface runoff containing de-icing chemicals; marine spray	(1) Top of bottom slab for rectangular voided deck	Reinforcing steel	40 ± 10	40 ± 10
		Pretensioning strands	—	55 ± 5
		Post-tensioning ducts	60* ± 10	60* ± 10
	(2) Top surface of buried structure with less than 600 mm fill† Top surface of bottom slab of buried structure	Reinforcing steel	70 ± 20	50 ± 10
		Pretensioning strands	—	65 ± 5
		Post-tensioning ducts	90* ± 15	70* ± 10
	(3) Top surface of structural component, except (1) and (2) above‡	Reinforcing steel	70 ± 20	55 ± 10
		Pretensioning strands	—	70 ± 5
		Post-tensioning ducts Longitudinal	130* ± 15	120* ± 10
		Transverse ( $d_d \leq 60$ mm)	90* ± 15	80* ± 10
(4) Soffit of precast deck form	Reinforcing steel	—	40 ± 10	
	Pretensioning strands	—	38 ± 3	
(5) Soffit of slab less than 300 mm thick or soffit of top slab of voided deck	Reinforcing steel	50 ± 10	45 ± 10	
	Pretensioning strands	—	60 ± 5	
	Post-tensioning ducts	70* ± 10	65* ± 10	
(6) Soffit of slab 300 mm thick or thicker or soffit of structural component, except (4) and (5) above	Reinforcing steel	60 ± 10	50 ± 10	
	Pretensioning strands	—	65 ± 5	
	Post-tensioning ducts	80* ± 10	70* ± 10	
(7) Vertical surface of arch, solid or voided deck, pier cap, T-beam, or interior diaphragm	Reinforcing steel	70 ± 10	60 ± 10	
	Pretensioning strands	—	75 ± 5	
	Post-tensioning ducts	90* ± 10	80* ± 10	
(8) Inside vertical surface of buried structure or inside surface of circular buried structure	Reinforcing steel	70 ± 20	50 ± 10	
	Pretensioning strands	—	65 ± 5	
	Post-tensioning ducts	90* ± 15	70* ± 10	
(9) Vertical surface of structural component, except (7) and (8) above	Reinforcing steel	70 ± 20	55 ± 10	
	Pretensioning strands	—	70 ± 5	
	Post-tensioning ducts	90* ± 15	75* ± 10	
(10) Precast T-, I-, or box girder	Reinforcing steel	—	35 +10 or -5	
	Pretensioning strands	—	50 ± 5	
	Post-tensioning ducts	—	55* ± 10	

(Continued)

which case the maximum spacing shall not exceed 450 mm. Welded wire fabric of equivalent area may be used for ties.

Ties shall be arranged so that every corner bar and alternate longitudinal bar has lateral support provided by the corner of a tie having an included angle of not more than 135°, and no bar shall be farther than 150 mm clear on either side from such a laterally supported bar. Ties shall be located vertically not more than half a tie spacing above the footing or from other support, and not more than half a tie spacing below the lowest horizontal reinforcement in the components supported above.

## 8.14.5 Reinforcement for shear and torsion

### 8.14.5.1 Transverse reinforcement

Transverse reinforcement shall consist of one of the following forms:

- (a) stirrups perpendicular to the axis of the component or at an angle of 45° or more to the longitudinal tension reinforcement, with the inclined stirrups oriented to intercept potential cracks;
- (b) well-anchored tendons that are detailed and constructed to minimize seating and time-dependent losses and are perpendicular to the axis of the component or at an angle of 45° or more to the longitudinal tension reinforcement, with the inclined tendons oriented to intercept potential diagonal cracks;
- (c) spirals; or
- (d) welded wire fabric, with the wires perpendicular to the axis of the component.

Transverse reinforcement for shear shall be anchored in accordance with Clause 8.15.1.5.

### 8.14.5.2 Torsional reinforcement

Torsional reinforcement shall consist of longitudinal reinforcement and one of the following forms of transverse reinforcement:

- (a) closed stirrups perpendicular to the axis of the component and anchored with 135° hooks;
- (b) a closed cage of welded wire fabric perpendicular to the axis of the component; or
- (c) spirals.

### Δ 8.14.6 Maximum spacing of reinforcement for shear and torsion

If  $V_f$  is less than or equal to  $(0.10\phi_c f'_c b_v d_v + V_p)$  and  $T_f$  is less than or equal to  $0.25T_{cr}$ , the spacing of the transverse reinforcement,  $s$ , measured in the longitudinal direction, shall not exceed the lesser of 600 mm or  $0.75d_v$ .

If  $V_f$  exceeds  $(0.10\phi_c f'_c b_v d_v + V_p)$ , or if  $T_f$  exceeds  $0.25T_{cr}$ ,  $s$  shall not exceed the lesser of 300 mm or  $0.33d_v$ .

The spacing of longitudinal bars for torsion distributed around the perimeter of the stirrups shall not exceed 300 mm. At least one longitudinal bar with a diameter not less than 0.06 times the spacing of the stirrups and not smaller than 15M shall be placed inside each corner of the closed stirrups. The corner bars shall be anchored in accordance with Clause 8.15.2 or 8.15.5.

## 8.15 Development and splices

### 8.15.1 Development

#### 8.15.1.1 General

The calculated tension or compression in the reinforcement at each section shall be developed on each side of that section by one or more of embedment length, end anchorage, and a hook or mechanical device. Hooks or mechanical devices may be used in developing the strength of the bars in tension only.

Tension reinforcement may be anchored by extending it into the compression zone or bending it and making it continuous with the reinforcement on the opposite face of the member.

Reinforcement shall extend beyond the point at which it is theoretically no longer required to resist flexure in accordance with the requirements of Clause 8.9.3.10.

The value of  $\sqrt{f'_c}$  in Clause 8.4.1.8 used to compute  $f_{cr}$  in Clauses 8.15.2.2, 8.15.2.3, 8.15.3.1, 8.15.5.2, and 8.15.7.2 shall not exceed 8.0.

### 8.15.1.2 Positive moment reinforcement

At least 33% of the positive moment reinforcement in simply supported members and 25% of the positive moment reinforcement in continuous members shall extend along the same face of the member into the support. Such reinforcement shall extend at least 150 mm beyond the centreline of the exterior support and shall satisfy the requirements of Clause 8.9.3.10.

When a flexural member is part of the lateral-load-resisting system, the positive moment reinforcement required to be extended into the support shall be anchored so as to develop the yield strength in tension at the face of the support.

### 8.15.1.3 Negative moment reinforcement

Negative moment reinforcement in a continuous, restrained, or cantilever member, or any member of a rigid frame, shall be anchored in or through the supporting member by embedment length, hooks, or mechanical anchorage.

At least 33% of the total reinforcement provided for negative moment at the support shall have an embedment length beyond the point of inflection not less than the effective depth of the member,  $12d_b$ , or 0.06 of the clear span, whichever is greatest.

### 8.15.1.4 Special members

Adequate end anchorage shall be provided for tension reinforcement in flexural members where stress in the reinforcement is not directly proportional to moment. Such members include, but are not limited to, sloped, stepped, or tapered footings, brackets, deep beams, and members in which the tension reinforcement is not parallel to the compression face.

### 8.15.1.5 Anchorage of transverse reinforcement

Transverse reinforcement provided for shear shall extend as close to the compression and tension surfaces of the member as cover requirements and the proximity of other reinforcement permit.

Transverse reinforcement provided for shear shall be anchored at both ends by one of the following:

- (a) For 15M and smaller bars and MD200 and smaller wire, a standard hook, as specified in Clause 8.14.1.1, around longitudinal reinforcement.
- (b) For 20M and 25M stirrups, a standard hook, as specified in Clause 8.14.1.1, around longitudinal reinforcement, plus an embedment between mid-depth of the member and the outside end of the hook equal to or greater than  $0.33\ell_d$ .
- (c) For each leg of welded smooth wire fabric forming single U-stirrups,
  - (i) two longitudinal wires running at a 50 mm spacing along the member at the top of the U; or
  - (ii) one longitudinal wire located not more than  $0.25d$  from the compression face and a second wire closer to the compression face and spaced not less than 50 mm from the first. The second wire may be located on the stirrup leg beyond a bend or on a bend with an inside diameter of not less than  $8d_b$ .
- (d) For each end of a single leg stirrup of welded smooth or deformed wire fabric, two longitudinal wires at a minimum spacing of 50 mm, with the inner wire at least  $0.25d$  from the mid-depth of the member. The outer longitudinal wire at the tension face shall not be farther from that face than the portion of primary flexural reinforcement closest to the face.
- (e) A mechanical anchor capable of developing the yield strength of the bar.

Pairs of U-stirrups or ties placed so as to form a closed unit shall be considered properly spliced when lapped for a length of  $1.3\ell_d$ . In components with a depth of at least 450 mm, such splices having  $A_{bfy}$  not

The embedment depth of the anchor device shall be adequate to develop a factored tensile resistance at least equal to the factored shear force being transferred, except that for anchors transferring load by shear friction, the factored tensile resistance shall not be less than  $V_f/\mu$ .

When the shear is transmitted by shear friction, shear lugs shall be considered effective only if they are perpendicular to the shear force and are located in a zone where compression is developed between the attachment and the concrete.

When the shear acts toward a free edge, the factored tensile resistance of concrete shall be based on a uniform tensile stress of  $0.75\phi_c f_{cr}$  acting on the effective area as follows:

- (a) for anchor bolts, studs, and bars, the effective stress area shall be that defined by the intersection of half of the  $90^\circ$  pyramid and the free edge;
- (b) for shear lugs, the effective stress area shall be defined by the intersection of projected  $45^\circ$  planes from the edges of the shear lug and the free edge. The bearing area of the shear lug shall be excluded from the effective stress area; and
- (c) where shear friction is employed, the effective stress area shall be defined by the intersection of the projected  $45^\circ$  planes and the free edge.

If the factored shear resistance of concrete is less than the factored shear force, reinforcement capable of resisting the factored shear force shall be provided across the potential failure surface.

#### **8.16.7.4 Reinforcement**

The reinforcement shall be proportioned for the factored force to be transferred by the anchor and shall be detailed to develop the required force on both sides of the potential failure surface.

#### **8.16.7.5 Compressive resistance of concrete**

The compressive resistance of concrete shall be determined in accordance with Clause 8.8.7.1. When compression exists over the entire base plate area, the bearing pressure on the concrete may be assumed to be uniform over an area equal to the width of the base plate multiplied by a length equal to the length of the base plate minus twice the eccentricity of the factored load normal to the base plate.

The moment resisted by the anchors shall be taken as the couple formed by the tensile resistance of the anchor determined in accordance with Clause 8.16.7.6.3 or 8.16.7.6.4, as applicable, and by the compressive resistance of the concrete determined in accordance with Clause 8.8.7.1.

#### **8.16.7.6 Design requirements for anchors**

##### **8.16.7.6.1 General**

Anchors shall have a minimum diameter of 15 mm.

##### **8.16.7.6.2 Tensile resistance of bolts and studs**

The factored tensile resistance of an anchor bolt or stud shall be as specified in Clause 10.19.2.1.

##### **8.16.7.6.3 Tensile resistance of reinforcing bars**

The factored tensile resistance,  $f_r$ , of an anchor made of a reinforcing bar shall be taken as  $\phi_s f_y A_b$ .

##### **8.16.7.6.4 Shear resistance**

###### **8.16.7.6.4.1**

When shear force is transferred through shear friction, the factored shear resistance of the anchorage system,  $V_r$ , shall be calculated as  $\mu F_r$ . The values of  $\mu$  may be taken as follows:

- (a) as-rolled steel plate against concrete or grout where the plate is embedded a full plate thickness below the concrete surface: 0.8;
- (b) as-rolled steel plate against concrete or grout, with the contact plane coinciding with the concrete surface: 0.6; and
- (c) as-rolled steel plate against grout, with the contact plane exterior to the concrete surface: 0.5.

**Δ 8.16.7.6.4.2**

When shear force is transferred through bearing, the shear resistance of the anchor shall be taken as the smallest of

- (a) the factored shear resistance of an anchor rod or stud as specified in Clause 10.19.2.2;
- (b)  $V_r = 0.8\phi_s f_y A_b$  (for an anchor made of a reinforcing bar); and
- (c)  $B_r$  as specified in Clause 8.16.7.3.

**Δ 8.16.7.6.5 Combined tension and shear**

An anchor rod or a stud required to develop resistance to combined tension and shear through bearing shall be proportioned in accordance with Clause 10.19.2.3.

An anchor made of a reinforcing bar required to develop resistance to combined tension and shear through bearing shall be proportioned in such a manner that  $(V_f/V_r)^2 + (F_t/F_r)^2 \leq 1.0$ .

For an anchor required to develop resistance to combined axial tension and shear through shear friction, the cross-sectional area shall be at least the sum of

- (a) the area required by Clause 8.16.7.6.2 or 8.16.7.6.3; and
- (b) the area required by Clause 8.16.7.6.4.

**8.16.7.6.6 Combined tension and bending**

An anchor required to develop resistance to combined tension and bending shall be proportioned to meet the requirements of Clause 10.19.2.4.

**8.16.7.7 Additional requirements for grouted and adhesive anchors****8.16.7.7.1 General**

Grouts and adhesives shall be formulated, mixed, and placed in accordance with Approved procedures established by tests.

Randomly selected grouted and adhesive anchors shall be tested in accordance with Clause 8.16.7.7.2 to a minimum of 110% of the factored load effect to verify load transfer capabilities. The tests may be waived if acceptable test and installation data are available.

Grouted and adhesive anchors installed in tensile zones of a concrete member shall be capable of sustaining the factored resistance in cracked concrete.

**8.16.7.7.2 Testing of anchors**

Tests shall be carried out by an Approved testing agency or by the anchor manufacturer using an Approved procedure and shall be certified by a suitably qualified person. Test reports shall present the testing program, procedures, results, and conclusions.

Tests shall be representative of the anchorage system with regard to the embedment depth, spacing, edge distance, load application, concrete type and strength, grouts or adhesives used, and expected environmental conditions. A minimum of five tests shall be carried out for each applicable combination of variables.

Tests conducted in tension shall use the embedment depth needed to attain the full capacity of the anchor. During testing of the tensile strength of an anchor, the testing device shall not apply compression to the concrete surface within a circle that is concentric with the anchor and has a diameter of four times the anchor embedment depth.

**8.17 Seismic design and detailing**

Seismic design and detailing shall meet the requirements of Section 4.



## Δ Section 9 — Wood structures

9.1	Scope	384
9.2	Definitions	384
9.3	Symbols	386
9.4	Limit states	388
9.4.1	General	388
9.4.2	Serviceability limit states	388
9.4.3	Ultimate limit states	388
9.4.4	Resistance factor	388
9.5	General design	389
9.5.1	Design assumption	389
9.5.2	Spans	389
9.5.3	Load-duration factor	389
9.5.4	Size-effect factors	389
9.5.5	Service condition	389
9.5.6	Load-sharing factor	389
9.5.7	Notched components	390
9.5.8	Butt joint stiffness factor	390
9.5.9	Treatment factor	391
9.6	Flexure	391
9.6.1	Flexural resistance	391
9.6.2	Size effect	391
9.6.3	Lateral stability	392
9.7	Shear	392
9.7.1	Shear resistance	392
9.7.2	Size effect	393
9.7.3	Shear force and shear load	393
9.7.4	Shear modulus	393
9.7.5	Vertically laminated decks	393
9.8	Compression members	393
9.8.1	General	393
9.8.2	Compressive resistance parallel to grain	394
9.8.3	Slenderness effect	394
9.8.4	Amplified moments	396
9.8.5	Rigorous evaluation of amplified moments	396
9.8.6	Approximate evaluation of amplified moments	398
9.9	Tension members	399
9.10	Compression at an angle to grain	400
9.11	Sawn wood	401
9.11.1	Materials	401
9.11.2	Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity	401
9.12	Glued-laminated timber	404
9.12.1	Materials	404
9.12.2	Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity	404
9.12.3	Vertically laminated beams	405
9.12.4	Camber	405
9.12.5	Varying depth	405
9.12.6	Curved members	406
9.13	Structural composite lumber	406
9.13.1	Materials	406
9.13.2	Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity	406
9.14	Wood piles	406

- 9.14.1 Materials 406
- 9.14.2 Splicing 406
- 9.14.3 Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity 406
- 9.14.4 Design 407
- 9.15 Fastenings 407
- 9.15.1 General 407
- 9.15.2 Design 408
- 9.15.3 Construction 408
- 9.16 Hardware and metalwork 408
- 9.17 Durability 408
- 9.17.1 General 408
- 9.17.2 Pedestrian contact 408
- 9.17.3 Incising 408
- 9.17.4 Fabrication 409
- 9.17.5 Pressure preservative treatment of laminated veneer lumber 409
- 9.17.6 Pressure preservative treatment of parallel strand lumber 409
- 9.17.7 Field treatment 409
- 9.17.8 Treated round wood piles 409
- 9.17.9 Untreated round wood piles 409
- 9.17.10 Pile heads 409
- 9.17.11 Protective treatment of hardware and metalwork 409
- 9.17.12 Stress-laminated timber decking 410
- 9.18 Wood cribs 410
- 9.18.1 General 410
- 9.18.2 Member sizes and assembly 410
- 9.18.3 Fastening 410
- 9.18.4 Load transfer to cribs 410
- 9.19 Wood trestles 411
- 9.19.1 General 411
- 9.19.2 Pile bents 411
- 9.19.3 Framed bents 411
- 9.19.4 Caps 411
- 9.19.5 Bracing 411
- 9.20 Stringers and girders 411
- 9.20.1 Design details 411
- 9.20.2 Diaphragms 412
- 9.21 Nail-laminated wood decks 412
- 9.21.1 General 412
- 9.21.2 Transversely laminated wood decks 412
- 9.21.3 Longitudinal nail-laminated wood decks 413
- 9.22 Wood-concrete composite decks 413
- 9.22.1 General 413
- 9.22.2 Wood base 413
- 9.22.3 Concrete slab 414
- 9.22.4 Wood-concrete interface 415
- 9.22.5 Factored moment resistance 416
- 9.23 Stress-laminated wood decks 417
- 9.23.1 General 417
- 9.23.2 Post-tensioning materials 417
- 9.23.3 Design of post-tensioning system 417
- 9.23.4 Design of distribution bulkhead 419
- 9.23.5 Laminated decks 421
- 9.23.6 Net section 422
- 9.23.7 Hardware durability 422

where the frequency of butt joints is 1 in  $N_b$ , as specified in Clauses 9.21.2.2.5 and 9.22.2.2.2. For longitudinal nail-laminated wood decks other than wood-concrete composite decks, the value of  $k_b$  shall be calculated as follows:

$$k_b = 0.8(N_b - 1)/N_b$$

### 9.5.9 Treatment factor

The properties specified given in this Section incorporate adjustments for preservative treatment and incising. For wood treated with a fire retardant or other strength-reducing chemicals, the assumed properties shall be based on the documented results of tests that take into account the effects of time, temperature, and moisture content.

## 9.6 Flexure

### Δ 9.6.1 Flexural resistance

The factored resistance,  $M_r$ , of glued-laminated members shall be the lesser of

$$M_r = \phi k_d k_{\ell s} k_m f_{bu} S$$

and

$$M_r = \phi k_d k_m k_{sb} f_{bu} S$$

The factored resistance,  $M_r$ , shall be calculated as follows for all other wood members:

$$M_r = \phi k_d k_{\ell s} k_m k_{sb} f_{bu} S$$

where  $f_{bu}$  is obtained from Tables 9.12 to 9.17, as applicable, and the values of  $k_d$ ,  $k_{\ell s}$ ,  $k_m$ , and  $k_{sb}$  are specified in Clauses 9.5.3, 9.6.3, 9.5.6, and 9.6.2, respectively.

### Δ 9.6.2 Size effect

The value of  $k_{sb}$  for glued-laminated members shall be calculated as follows:

$$k_{sb} = 1.03 (b \times L \times 10^{-6})^{-0.18}$$

where  $b$  is the beam width (for single-piece laminations) or the width of the widest piece (for multiple-piece laminations) and  $L$  is the length of beam segment from point of zero moment to point of zero moment.

The value of  $k_{sb}$  for sawn wood members shall be obtained from Table 9.4. The value of  $k_{sb}$  for members other than glued-laminated or sawn wood members shall be 1.0.

**Table 9.4**  
**Size-effect factors  $k_{sb}$  for flexure and  $k_{sv}$  for shear for all species and grades**

(See Clauses 9.6.2, 9.7.2, and 9.22.5.2.)

Smaller dimension, mm	Larger dimension, mm						
	89	140	184	235	286	337	≥ 387
≤ 64	1.7	1.4	1.2	1.1	1.0	0.9	0.8
> 64 but < 114	1.7	1.5	1.3	1.2	1.1	1.0	0.9
≥ 114	—	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.1	1.0	0.9

### 9.6.3 Lateral stability

The value of  $k_{ls}$  shall be obtained from Table 9.5, where  $b$  and  $d$  are, respectively, the width and depth of the beam or laminate, and  $C_s$  and  $C_k$  are calculated as follows:

$$C_s = \sqrt{\frac{L_u d}{b^2}}$$

$$C_k = \sqrt{\frac{E_{05}}{f_{bu}}}$$

where  $L_u$  is the laterally unsupported length of the component and  $f_{bu}$  and  $E_{05}$  are obtained from Tables 9.12 to 9.17, as applicable.

For laminated wood decks, or when the compression edge of a beam is effectively supported along its length,  $k_{ls}$  shall be taken as 1.0.

When  $d/b$  is greater than 1.0, lateral support shall be provided at points of bearing to restrain torsional rotation.

A beam shall not have  $C_s$  greater than 30.0.

**Table 9.5**  
**Modification factor for lateral stability,  $k_{ls}$**

(See Clause 9.6.3.)

$d/b$	$C_s$	$k_{ls}$
≤ 1.0	—	1.0
> 1.0	≤ 10.0	1.0
> 1.0	> 10.0 but < $C_k$	$1 - 0.3(C_s/C_k)^4$
> 1.0	≥ $C_k$	$(0.70E_{05}) / (C_s^2 f_{bu})$

## 9.7 Shear

### 9.7.1 Shear resistance

The factored shear resistance,  $V_r$ , of a member of rectangular section shall be calculated as follows:

$$V_r = \phi k_d k_m k_{sv} f_{vu} A / 1.5$$

where  $f_{vu}$  is obtained from Tables 9.12 to 9.17 and the values of  $k_d$ ,  $k_m$ , and  $k_{sv}$  are as specified in Clauses 9.5.3, 9.5.6, and 9.7.2, respectively.

### 9.7.2 Size effect

The value of factor  $k_{sv}$  for sawn wood members shall be obtained from Table 9.4. The value of  $k_{sv}$  for glued-laminated timbers shall be  $V^{-0.18}$ .

### 9.7.3 Shear force and shear load

The factored shear resistance of a sawn member shall equal or exceed the factored shear force acting on the member (the shear effects of all loads acting within a distance from a support equal to the depth of the member need not be considered). The factored shear resistance of a glued-laminated member shall equal or exceed the factored shear load on the member,  $V_f$ , calculated as follows:

$$V_f = 0.82 \left[ \frac{1}{L} \int_0^L |V(x)|^5 dx \right]^{0.2}$$

where

$|V(x)|$  = absolute value of the total factored shear force at a section at distance  $x$  along the length of the member

### 9.7.4 Shear modulus

The value of the shear modulus shall be 0.065 times the modulus of elasticity,  $E_{50}$ , obtained from Tables 9.14 to 9.17.

### 9.7.5 Vertically laminated decks

Shear shall be neglected in vertically laminated decks.

## 9.8 Compression members

### Δ 9.8.1 General

The proportioning of compression members shall satisfy the following:

$$\left( \frac{P}{P_r} \right)^2 + \frac{M_c}{M_r} \leq 1.0 \text{ (for uniaxial bending)}$$

$$\frac{P}{P_r} + \frac{M_x}{M_{xr}} + \frac{M_y}{M_{yr}} \leq 1.0 \text{ (for biaxial bending)}$$

where

- the factored resistance in compression,  $P_r$ , is as specified in Clause 9.8.2.1;
- the factored resistance in flexure,  $M_r$ , is as specified in Clause 9.6.1;
- the factored resistances in flexure,  $M_{xr}$  and  $M_{yr}$ , for bending about the  $x$ - and  $y$ -axes, respectively, are calculated in the same manner as  $M_r$ ;
- the amplified moment,  $M_c$ , is calculated in accordance with Clause 9.8.5.1 or 9.8.6 by taking into account the slenderness effects specified in Clause 9.8.3; and
- the amplified moments,  $M_x$  and  $M_y$ , acting about the  $x$ - and  $y$ - axes, respectively, are calculated in the same manner as  $M_c$ .

## 9.8.2 Compressive resistance parallel to grain

### 9.8.2.1 General

The factored compressive resistance parallel to the grain,  $P_r$ , shall be calculated as follows:

$$P_r = \phi k_m k_d k_{sp} k_c f_{pu} A$$

where  $k_{sp}$  is obtained from Clause 9.8.2.2 or 9.8.2.3,  $k_c$  is obtained from Clause 9.8.2.4, and  $f_{pu}$  is obtained from Tables 9.9 to 9.13.

### 9.8.2.2 Size factor for sawn wood in compression

The size factor,  $k_{sp}$ , for sawn wood in compression parallel to the grain shall be calculated as follows:

$$k_{sp} = 6.3(dL)^{-0.13} \leq 1.3$$

where

$d$  = dimension in the direction of buckling, mm

$L$  = unsupported length associated with the member dimension, mm

### 9.8.2.3 Size factor for glued-laminated timber in compression

The size factor,  $k_{sp}$ , for glued-laminated timber in compression parallel to the grain shall be calculated as follows:

$$k_{sp} = 0.68V^{-0.13} \leq 1.3$$

### 9.8.2.4 Slenderness factor

The slenderness factor,  $k_c$ , for members in compression parallel to the grain shall be calculated as follows:

$$k_c = \left[ 1 + \frac{k_m k_d k_{sp} f_{pu} C_c^3}{35E_{05}} \right]^{-1.0}$$

where  $C_c$  is determined in accordance with Clause 9.8.3.3 and  $E_{05}$  is obtained from Tables 9.12 to 9.17.




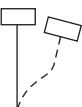
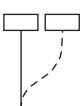
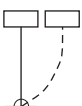

## 9.8.3 Slenderness effect

### 9.8.3.1 Effective length

The effective length of a compression member shall be taken as  $kL_u$  and, for members other than piles, the following requirements shall apply:

- the unsupported length,  $L_u$ , shall be taken as the centre-to-centre distance of lateral supports capable of sustaining a lateral restraint force of at least  $0.04P$ , together with any other force that is generated by the effects of end moments and lateral loading;
- for compression members braced against side-sway, the effective length factor,  $k$ , shall be taken as 1.0 unless rigorous analysis confirms a lower value; and
- for compression members not braced against side-sway, the effective length factor,  $k$ , corresponding to the end-restraint condition of the member, shall be obtained from Table 9.6 or shall be determined by rigorous analysis. For the latter case, the value of  $k$  shall not be taken as less than 1.0.

**Table 9.6**  
**Minimum values of the effective length factor,  $k$**   
(See Clauses 9.8.3.1 and 9.8.3.2.)

End restraint		Minimum value of effective length factor, $k$
Held in position and restrained against rotation at both ends		0.65
Held in position at both ends and restrained against rotation at one end		0.80
Held in position but free to rotate at both ends		1.00
Held in position and restrained against rotation at one end, and restrained against rotation, but not held in position, at the other end		1.20
Held in position and restrained against rotation at one end, and partially restrained against rotation, but not held in position, at the other end		1.50
Held in position at one end, but not restrained against rotation, and restrained against rotation, but not held in position, at the other end		2.00
Held in position and restrained against rotation at one end, but not held in position or restrained against rotation at the other end		2.00

**9.8.3.2 Effective length of piles**

When the finished pile projects above the ground and is not braced against buckling, the effective length shall be determined in accordance with Table 9.6 (using the value associated with the end restraint provided by the structure the pile supports) and in accordance with the following requirements:

- (a) in firm ground, the lower point of contraflexure of the pile shall be taken at a depth below the ground level that is not greater than one-tenth of the exposed length of the pile;
- (b) where the top stratum of the ground is soft clay or silt, the lower point of contraflexure of the pile shall be taken at a depth below the ground level that is not greater than one-half of the depth of penetration into this stratum or less than one-tenth of the exposed length of the pile; and
- (c) a stratum of extremely soft soil, peat, or mud shall be treated as if it were water.

Where a pile is wholly embedded in soil, the effect of slenderness may be ignored.

### Δ 9.8.3.3 Slenderness ratio

For simple compression members of constant rectangular section, the slenderness ratio,  $C_c$ , shall not exceed 50 and shall be taken as

$$C_c = \frac{\text{effective length, } kL_u, \text{ associated with width}}{\text{member width}}$$

and

$$C_c = \frac{\text{effective length, } kL_u, \text{ associated with depth}}{\text{member depth}}$$

For sawn wood members, compression capacity shall be calculated separately for member width and member depth using the corresponding slenderness ratio.

For glued-laminated members, the greater slenderness ratio may be used to calculating compression capacity.

For piles and other round compression members, the slenderness ratio,  $C_c$ , shall not exceed 50 and shall be calculated as follows:

$$C_c = kL_u / 0.866D_{eff}$$

### 9.8.4 Amplified moments

At the ultimate limit state, the effect of lateral deflection in causing or amplifying bending due to axial loads shall be considered as follows:

- (a) for members not braced against side-sway, when  $C_c$  is greater than 11.6; and
- (b) for members braced against side-sway, when  $C_c$  is greater than  $17.3 - 5.8M_1/M_2$ .

### 9.8.5 Rigorous evaluation of amplified moments

#### 9.8.5.1 General

When the approximate method of Clause 9.8.6 is not adopted, the amplified moment,  $M_c$ , shall be obtained by taking account of the effect of factored axial loads in amplifying the moments due to end eccentricities, bow, and lateral loads in the unsupported length,  $L_u$ . The unsupported length shall be determined in accordance with Clause 9.8.3.1 or 9.8.3.2, the end eccentricity in accordance with Clause 9.8.5.2 or 9.8.5.3, and the bow moments in accordance with Clause 9.8.5.4.

#### 9.8.5.2 End eccentricity

All compression members, except piles, shall be analyzed for end eccentricity at each end. The eccentricity shall be taken as the greater of

- (a) the eccentricity corresponding to the maximum end moment associated with the axial load; and
- (b) 0.05 times the lateral dimension of the member in the plane of the flexure being considered.

The eccentricity corresponding to Item (b) shall be assumed to cause uniaxial bending with single curvature.

#### 9.8.5.3 End eccentricity in piles

When lateral displacement of the pile butt is prevented, the moment,  $M_p$ , shall be determined at a section 0.55 times the effective length below the butt, and shall be calculated as the product of  $P$  and  $e_o$ , plus the effects of end moments and the moments due to lateral loads. The value of  $e_o$  shall be obtained from Table 9.7.



Δ

**Table 9.15**  
**Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity**  
**for glued-laminated Douglas fir timber, MPa**  
(See Clauses 9.5.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.3, 9.7.1, 9.7.4, 9.8.2.1, 9.8.2.4, 9.10, and 9.12.2.)

Type of stress	CSA stress grade					
	24f-E bending grade	24f-EX bending grade	20f-E bending grade	20f-EX bending grade	16c-E compression grade	18t-E tension grade
Bending moment positive, $f_{bu}$	27.5	27.5	23	23	12.6	21.9
Bending moment negative, $f_{bu}$	12.6	27.5	12.6	23	12.6	21.9
Longitudinal shear, $f_{vu}$	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4
Compression parallel to grain, $f_{pu}$	26.4*	26.4*	26.4*	26.4*	26.4	26.4
Compression parallel to grain combined with bending, $f_{pu}$	26.4*	26.4	26.4*	26.4	26.4	26.4
Compression perpendicular to grain, $f_{qu}$	5.8	5.8	5.8	5.8	5.8	5.8
Axial tension at gross section, $f_{tg}$	13.4*	13.4	13.4*	13.4	13.4	15.7
Axial tension at net section, $f_{tn}$	17.9*	17.9	17.9*	17.9	17.9	20.1
Modulus of elasticity						
$E_{50}$	12 100	12 100	11 800	11 800	11 800	13 100
$E_{05}$	10 600	10 600	10 200	10 200	10 200	11 400

\*The use of this stress grade for this primary application is not recommended.

**Notes:**

(1) Designers should check the availability of grades before specifying.

(2) The values in this Table are based on the following standard conditions:

- (a) semi-wet service conditions; and
- (b) standard term duration of load.

**9.12.3 Vertically laminated beams**

The factored resistance in flexure for beams composed of vertical laminations shall be calculated as for load-sharing systems in sawn wood.

**9.12.4 Camber**

Glued-laminated beams shall be cambered by the sum of 1/600 of the span plus twice the calculated deflection due to the unfactored dead loads.

**9.12.5 Varying depth**

When there is a variation in the depth of a flexural member, the bevel of the laminates on the tension side shall not be steeper than 7% and the factored fibre stress shall not be less than 50% of the specified strength.

### 9.12.6 Curved members

The requirements of this Section shall apply only to glued-laminated members with a radius greater than 12 m. In such members the reduction in capacity due to curvature may be ignored.

## 9.13 Structural composite lumber

### 9.13.1 Materials

Structural composite lumber shall be laminated veneer lumber or parallel strand lumber manufactured from Douglas fir.

### 9.13.2 Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity

The specified strengths and moduli of elasticity shall be obtained from ASTM D 5456, as modified by the procedures specified in CAN/CSA-O86. Typical values for some representative products are specified in Table 9.16.

**Table 9.16**  
**Typical specified strengths and moduli of elasticity**  
**for structural composite lumber, MPa**

(See Clauses 9.5.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.3, 9.7.1, 9.7.4, 9.8.2.1, 9.8.2.4, and 9.10.)

	Laminated veneer lumber	Parallel strand lumber
<b>Type of stress</b>		
Bending at extreme fibre, $f_{bu}$	32.1	33.2
Longitudinal shear — Parallel, $f_{vu}^*$	3.3	3.3
Longitudinal shear — Perpendicular, $f_{vu}^*$	2.0	2.4
Compression parallel to grain, $f_{pu}$	31.2	33.2
Compression perpendicular to grain — Parallel, $f_{qu}^*$	8.6	8.6
Compression perpendicular to grain — Perpendicular, $f_{qu}^*$	5.5	5.5
Axial tension parallel to grain, $f_{tu}$	20.0	27.5
<b>Modulus of elasticity</b>		
$E_{50}$	13 000	13 000
$E_{05}$	11 300	11 300

\*To glue-line for laminated veneer lumber and to wide face of strand for parallel strand lumber.

**Note:** These values are provided for illustrative purposes; the design values shall be obtained after verification of the structural properties and adjustment factors of the proprietary products.

## 9.14 Wood piles

### 9.14.1 Materials

Wood pile materials shall comply with CSA CAN3-O56.

### 9.14.2 Splicing

Splicing of wood piles shall require Approval.

### 9.14.3 Specified strengths and moduli of elasticity

The specified strengths and moduli of elasticity for round wood piles shall be obtained from Table 9.17.

## Δ Section 10 — Steel structures

10.1	Scope	428
10.2	Definitions	428
10.3	Abbreviations and symbols	430
10.3.1	Abbreviations	430
10.3.2	Symbols	430
10.4	Materials	437
10.4.1	General	437
10.4.2	Structural steel	437
10.4.3	Cast steel	437
10.4.4	Stainless steel	438
10.4.5	Bolts	438
10.4.6	Welding electrodes	438
10.4.7	Stud shear connectors	438
10.4.8	Cables	438
10.4.9	High-strength bars	438
10.4.10	Galvanizing and metallizing	438
10.4.11	Identification	438
10.4.12	Coefficient of thermal expansion	439
10.4.13	Pins and rollers	439
10.5	Design theory and assumptions	439
10.5.1	General	439
10.5.2	Ultimate limit states	439
10.5.3	Serviceability limit states	439
10.5.4	Fatigue limit state	439
10.5.5	Fracture control	440
10.5.6	Seismic requirements	440
10.5.7	Resistance factors	440
10.5.8	Analysis	440
10.5.9	Design lengths of members	440
10.6	Durability	441
10.6.1	General	441
10.6.2	Corrosion as a deterioration mechanism	441
10.6.3	Corrosion protection	441
10.6.4	Superstructure components	441
10.6.5	Other components	442
10.6.6	Areas inaccessible after erection	444
10.6.7	Detailing for durability	444
10.7	Design details	444
10.7.1	General	444
10.7.2	Minimum thickness of steel	444
10.7.3	Floor beams and diaphragms at piers and abutments	445
10.7.4	Camber	445
10.7.5	Welded attachments	446
10.8	Tension members	446
10.8.1	General	446
10.8.2	Axial tensile resistance	447
10.8.3	Axial tension and bending	447
10.8.4	Tensile resistance of cables	447
10.9	Compression members	447
10.9.1	General	447
10.9.2	Width-to-thickness ratio of elements in compression	448

- 10.9.3 Axial compressive resistance 450
- 10.9.4 Axial compression and bending 451
- 10.9.5 Composite columns 453
- 10.10 Beams and girders 455
  - 10.10.1 General 455
  - 10.10.2 Class 1 and 2 sections 455
  - 10.10.3 Class 3 sections 457
  - 10.10.4 Stiffened plate girders 457
  - 10.10.5 Shear resistance 458
  - 10.10.6 Intermediate transverse stiffeners 459
  - 10.10.7 Longitudinal web stiffeners 460
  - 10.10.8 Bearing stiffeners 461
  - 10.10.9 Lateral bracing, cross-frames, and diaphragms 462
- 10.11 Composite beams and girders 463
  - 10.11.1 General 463
  - 10.11.2 Proportioning 463
  - 10.11.3 Effects of creep and shrinkage 463
  - 10.11.4 Control of permanent deflections 463
  - 10.11.5 Class 1 and Class 2 sections 463
  - 10.11.6 Class 3 sections 467
  - 10.11.7 Stiffened plate girders 469
  - 10.11.8 Shear connectors 470
  - 10.11.9 Lateral bracing, cross-frames, and diaphragms 472
- 10.12 Composite box girders 472
  - 10.12.1 General 472
  - 10.12.2 Effective width of tension flanges 472
  - 10.12.3 Web plates 472
  - 10.12.4 Flange-to-web welds 472
  - 10.12.5 Moment resistance 472
  - 10.12.6 Diaphragms, cross-frames, and lateral bracing 474
  - 10.12.7 Multiple box girders 475
  - 10.12.8 Single box girders 475
- 10.13 Horizontally curved girders 476
  - 10.13.1 General 476
  - 10.13.2 Special considerations 476
  - 10.13.3 Design theory 477
  - 10.13.4 Bearings 477
  - 10.13.5 Diaphragms, cross-frames, and lateral bracing 477
  - 10.13.6 Steel I-girders 478
  - 10.13.7 Composite box girders 480
  - 10.13.8 Camber 482
- 10.14 Trusses 482
  - 10.14.1 General 482
  - 10.14.2 Built-up members 482
  - 10.14.3 Bracing 483
- 10.15 Arches 484
  - 10.15.1 General 484
  - 10.15.2 Width-to-thickness ratios 484
  - 10.15.3 Longitudinal web stiffeners 484
  - 10.15.4 Axial compression and bending 484
  - 10.15.5 Arch ties 485
- 10.16 Orthotropic decks 485
  - 10.16.1 General 485
  - 10.16.2 Effective width of deck 485

10.16.3	Superposition of local and global effects	485
10.16.4	Deflection	486
10.16.5	Girder diaphragms	486
10.16.6	Design detail requirements	486
10.16.7	Wearing surface	487
10.17	Structural fatigue	488
10.17.1	General	488
10.17.2	Live-load-induced fatigue	488
10.17.3	Distortion-induced fatigue	500
10.17.4	Orthotropic decks	501
10.18	Splices and connections	501
10.18.1	General	501
10.18.2	Bolted connections	502
10.18.3	Welds	504
10.18.4	Detailing of bolted connections	505
10.18.5	Connection reinforcement and stiffening	508
10.19	Anchor rods	509
10.19.1	General	509
10.19.2	Anchor rod resistance	509
10.20	Pins, rollers, and rockers	510
10.20.1	Bearing resistance	510
10.20.2	Pins	510
10.21	Torsion	511
10.21.1	General	511
10.21.2	Members of closed cross-section	511
10.21.3	Members of open cross-section	512
10.22	Steel piles	513
10.22.1	General	513
10.22.2	Resistance factors	513
10.22.3	Compressive resistance	513
10.22.4	Unsupported length	513
10.22.5	Effective length factor	513
10.22.6	Splices	513
10.22.7	Welding	513
10.22.8	Composite tube piles	513
10.23	Fracture control	514
10.23.1	General	514
10.23.2	Identification	514
10.23.3	Fracture toughness	514
10.23.4	Welding of fracture-critical and primary tension members	515
10.23.5	Welding corrections and repairs to fracture-critical members	516
10.23.6	Non-destructive testing of fracture-critical members	519
10.24	Construction requirements for structural steel	519
10.24.1	General	519
10.24.2	Submissions	519
10.24.3	Materials	520
10.24.4	Fabrication	520
10.24.5	Welded construction	523
10.24.6	Bolted construction	524
10.24.7	Tolerances	527
10.24.8	Quality control	528
10.24.9	Transportation and delivery	529
10.24.10	Erection	529

# Section 10

## Steel structures

### 10.1 Scope

This Section specifies requirements for the design of structural steel bridges, including requirements for structural steel components, welds, bolts, and other fasteners required in fabrication and erection. Requirements related to the repeated application of loads and to fracture control and fracture toughness for primary tension and fracture-critical members are also specified.

### 10.2 Definitions

The following definitions apply in this Section:

**Brittle fracture** — a type of fracture in structural materials without prior plastic deformation that usually occurs suddenly.

**Buckling load** — the load at which a member or element reaches a condition of instability.

**Camber** — the built-in deviation of a bridge member from straight, when viewed in elevation.

**Class** — a designation of structural sections with regard to the width-to-thickness ratios of their constituent elements and their flexural-compressive behaviour.

**Coating** — an Approved protective system for steel, e.g., galvanizing, metallizing, a paint system, or coal tar epoxy.

**Composite beam or girder** — a steel beam or girder structurally connected to a concrete slab so that the beam and slab respond to loads as a unit.

**Composite column** — a column consisting of a steel tube filled with concrete, with or without internal reinforcement.

**Critical net area** — the area with the least tensile or tensile-shear resistance.

**Element** — a flat plate or plate-like component of a structural member.

**Erection diagrams** — drawings that show the layout and dimensions of a steel structure and from which shop details are made. They also correlate the fabricator's piece marks with locations on the structure.

**Fatigue** — initiation of microscopic cracks and propagation of such cracks into macroscopic cracks caused by the repeated application of load.

**Fatigue limit** — the level of stress range below which no fatigue crack growth is assumed to occur.

**Fixed joint** — a joint that allows rotation but not translation.

**Flush** — weld reinforcement not exceeding 1 mm in height that has a smooth, gradual transition with the surrounding plate (and involving grinding where necessary).

**Fracture-critical members** members or portions of members, including attachments, in a single load path structure that are subject to tensile stress and the failure of which can lead to collapse of the structure.

**Gauge** — the distance between successive holes, measured at right angles to the direction of the force in the member.

**Lateral torsional buckling** — the buckling of a member involving lateral deflection and twisting.

**Local buckling** — the buckling of a plate element (as distinct from the buckling of the member as a whole).

**Matching electrode** — an electrode with an ultimate strength closest to and greater than the minimum specified ultimate strength of the base metal.

**Notch toughness** — the ability of steel to absorb tensile strain energy in the presence of a notch.

**Post-buckling resistance** — the ability of plate elements to resist additional load after initial elastic buckling.

**Primary tension members** — members or portions of members, including attachments (but not fracture-critical members or secondary components) that are subject to tensile stress.

**Proposal** — a constructor's submission of changes, when engineering design is required, that affects either the original design or the method of construction or shipping of a structure.

**Prying action** — an additional force introduced into fasteners as a result of deformation of the parts that they connect.

**Single load path structure** — a structure in which failure of a single structural component could lead to a total collapse.

**Slenderness ratio** — the effective length of a member divided by the radius of gyration, both with respect to the same axis.

**Slip-critical connection** — a connection where slippage cannot be tolerated, including connections subject to fatigue or to frequent load reversal or where the resulting deflections are unacceptable.

**Smooth** — a profile of weld reinforcement where any uneven surface has been ground away and the remaining metal profile merges gradually with the surrounding plate. In order to be regarded as smooth, weld reinforcements that remain after grinding are limited to 2 mm for plate thicknesses of 50 mm and less and 3 mm for plate thicknesses greater than 50 mm.

**Snug-tight** — the tightness of a bolt that is attained after a few impacts of an impact wrench or the full effort of a person using a spud wrench.

**Stress range** — the algebraic difference between the maximum and the minimum stresses caused by fatigue loading, where tensile stress has the opposite sign to compressive stress.

**Stress range category** — a category that establishes the level of stress range permitted in accordance with the classification of the detail and the number of the design stress cycles.

**Tension-field action** — the truss-like behaviour of a plate girder panel under shear force that develops after shear-buckling of the web and is characterized by diagonal tensile forces in the web and compressive forces in the transverse stiffeners.

**Web crippling** — the local failure of a web plate in the immediate vicinity of a concentrated load or reaction.

## 10.3 Abbreviations and symbols

### 10.3.1 Abbreviations

The following abbreviations apply in this Section:

- CJP — complete joint penetration  
 FLS — fatigue limit state  
 PJP — partial joint penetration  
 SLS — serviceability limit state  
 ULS — ultimate limit state

### 10.3.2 Symbols

The following symbols apply in this Section:

- $A$  = area,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A'$  = area enclosed by the median line of the wall of a closed section,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_b$  = cross-sectional area of a bolt, based on nominal diameter,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_c$  = area of concrete in a tube pile,  $\text{mm}^2$ ; transverse area of concrete between the longitudinal shear planes that define  $A_{cv}$ ,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_{ce}$  = area of concrete in compression in a composite column,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_{cf}$  = area of compression flange of a steel section,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_{cv}$  = critical area of longitudinal shear planes in the concrete slab, one on each side of the steel compression flange, extending from the point of zero moment to the point of maximum moment,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_{de}$  = effective cross-sectional area of the deck, including longitudinal ribs,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_f$  = area of bottom flange of box girders, including longitudinal stiffeners,  $\text{mm}^2$ ; area of flanges of plate girder,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_g$  = gross area,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $\Delta A_{gv}$  = gross shear area for block shear failure (see Clause 10.8.1.3.2.4),  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_m$  = area of fusion face,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_n$  = critical net area,  $\text{mm}^2$ ; total net area of a member tributary to the particular lap splice, including elements not directly connected,  $\text{mm}^2$ ; tensile stress area,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $\Delta A_{ne}$  = effective net area (reduced for shear lag),  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $\Delta A_{n1}, A_{n2}, A_{n3}$  = net areas of the connected plate elements subject to load transfer by a transverse weld, two longitudinal welds, or a single longitudinal weld, respectively,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_r$  = area of reinforcing steel within the effective width of a concrete slab,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_{rL}$  = area of longitudinal reinforcement within the concrete area  $A_c$ ,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_{rt}$  = area of transverse reinforcement crossing the longitudinal shear planes of  $A_{cv}$ ,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_s$  = area of steel section,  $\text{mm}^2$ ; area of stiffener or pair of stiffeners,  $\text{mm}^2$ ; tensile stress area of bolt,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_{sc}$  = area of shear connector,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A'_{sc}$  = area of steel section in compression (see Clause 10.11.6.2.2),  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_{st}$  = tensile stress area,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A'_{st}$  = area of steel section in tension (see Clause 10.11.6.2.2),  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $A_w$  = web area or shear area,  $\text{mm}^2$ ; size of effective throat area of weld,  $\text{mm}^2$   
 $\Delta ADTT$  = average daily truck traffic  
 $ADTT_f$  = single lane average daily truck traffic for fatigue



$a$	= spacing of transverse stiffeners, mm; depth of compression block in a concrete slab, mm; transverse distance between centroids of groups of fasteners or welds connecting the batten to each main component, mm; clear distance between webs of a trough at deck level, mm
$a'$	= the larger of $e$ , the clear distance between stiffener troughs at deck level, and $a$ , the clear distance between webs of a trough at deck level, mm
$B$	= ratio in interaction equation for composite columns
$B_r$	= factored bearing resistance of a member or component, N
$B_1, B_2$	= geometric coefficients for a laterally unsupported monosymmetric I-beam
$b$	= half of width of flange of I-sections and T-sections, mm; full width of flange of channels, Z-sections, and stems of tees, mm; distance from free edge of plates to the first line of bolts or welds, mm; width of stiffener, mm; width of bottom flange plate between webs of box girder, mm
$b_c$	= width of concrete at the neutral axis, mm (see Clause 10.9.5.5)
$b_e$	= effective width of concrete slab, mm
$b_f$	= width of widest flange of curved welded I-girders, mm
$b_s$	= width of compression flange between longitudinal stiffeners, mm; distance from web to nearest longitudinal stiffener, mm
$C$	= coefficient in formula for area of stiffener; coefficient in formula for moment resistance of unstiffened compression flanges of composite box girders
$\Delta C_L$	= correction factor for fatigue truck weight
$C_c$	= factored compressive resistance of concrete, N
$C_e$	= Euler buckling load, N
$C_{ec}$	= Euler buckling load of a concrete-filled hollow structural section, N
$C_f$	= factored compressive force in a member or component at ULS, N
$C_r$	= factored compressive resistance of a member or component, N; factored compressive resistance of steel acting at the centroid of the steel area in compression, N; factored compressive resistance of reinforcing steel, N
$C'_r$	= factored compressive resistance of concrete area, $A_c$ , of a column, N
$C_{rc}$	= factored compressive resistance of a composite column, N
$C_{rcm}$	= factored compressive resistance of composite column that can coexist with $M_{rc}$ when all of the section is in compression, N
$C_{rco}$	= factored compressive resistance of composite column of zero slenderness ratio, N
$C_{rx}$	= factored compressive resistance of a member or component about the major axis, N
$C_s$	= factored compressive force in steel of composite beam when the plastic neutral axis is in the steel section, N; coefficient in equation for moment resistance of stiffened compression flanges of composite box girders
$C_w$	= warping torsional constant, mm <sup>6</sup>
$C_y$	= axial compressive force at yield stress, N
$C_1, C_2$	= limiting values of compressive resistance of slab, N
$c_1$	= coefficient related to the slip resistance of a bolted joint
$D$	= stiffener factor; outside diameter of circular section, mm; diameter of rocker or roller, mm; weld leg size, mm
$d$	= depth, mm; depth of beam or girder, mm; diameter of bolt or stud shear connector, mm; longitudinal distance centre-to-centre of battens, mm
$d_c$	= depth of compression portion of web in flexure, mm
$d'_s$	= distance from extreme compression fibre to centroid of reinforcing steel, mm

$E_c$	= modulus of elasticity of concrete, MPa
$E_s$	= modulus of elasticity of steel, MPa
$e$	= edge distance, mm; lever arm between the factored compressive resistance, $C_r$ , and the factored tensile resistance, $T_r$ , of the steel, mm; clear distance between stiffener troughs at deck level, mm
$e'$	= lever arm between the factored compressive resistance, $C_r'$ , and the factored tensile resistance, $T_r$ , of the steel, mm
$e_c$	= lever arm between the factored tensile resistance and the factored compressive resistance of the concrete, mm
$e_r$	= lever arm between the factored tensile resistance and the factored compressive resistance of the reinforcing steel, mm
$e_s$	= lever arm between the tensile resistance and the compressive resistance of the steel, mm
$F_{cr}$	= shear buckling stress, MPa; buckling stress of plate in compression, MPa; lateral torsional buckling stress, MPa
$F_e$	= critical torsional or flexural torsional elastic buckling stress, MPa
$F_{ex}$	= elastic flexural buckling stress about the major axis, MPa
$F_{ey}$	= elastic flexural buckling stress about the minor axis, MPa
$F_{ez}$	= elastic torsional buckling stress, MPa
$\Delta F_m$	= average of the tensile yield and ultimate strengths, MPa
$F_s$	= ULS shear stress, MPa
$F_{sr}$	= fatigue stress range resistance, MPa
$F_{srt}$	= constant amplitude threshold stress range, MPa
$F_{st}$	= factored force in stiffener at ULS, N
$F_t$	= tension field component of post-buckling stress, MPa
$F_u$	= specified minimum tensile strength, MPa
$F_y$	= specified minimum yield stress, yield point, or yield strength, MPa
$F_{yc}$	= yield strength of a column, MPa
$f_b$	= calculated bending stress, MPa
$f'_c$	= specified compressive strength of concrete, MPa
$\Delta f_{cr}$	= cracking strength of concrete, MPa
$f_g$	= axial global tensile stress in a deck induced by flexure and axial tension in the main longitudinal girders, MPa
$f_s$	= coexisting shear stress due to warping torsion, MPa
$f_{sr}$	= calculated FLS stress range at the detail due to passage of the CL-W Truck or of a tandem set of axles, MPa
$f_{vg}$	= the simultaneous global shear stress in the deck, MPa
$f_w$	= warping normal stress, MPa
$f_y$	= specified minimum yield strength of reinforcing steel, MPa
$G_s$	= shear modulus of elasticity of structural steel, MPa
$g$	= transverse spacing between fastener gauge lines, mm; distance from heel of connection angle to first gauge line of bolts in outstanding legs, mm
$H$	= coefficient for flexural torsional buckling
$h$	= clear depth of web between flanges, mm; width of rectangular hollow section, mm; height of shear connector, mm; height of stiffener, mm; height of trough, mm
$h'$	= length of inclined portion of a rib web, mm
$h_c$	= clear depth of column web, mm

$h_n$	= variable used to calculate $M_{rc}$ of a circular hollow structural section
$h_p$	= depth of subpanel of a girder, mm
$I$	= moment of inertia, mm <sup>4</sup>
$I_s$	= moment of inertia of longitudinal compression flange stiffener, mm <sup>4</sup>
$I_t$	= moment of inertia of transverse compression flange stiffener, mm <sup>4</sup> ; moment of inertia of transformed section, mm <sup>4</sup>
$I_x$	= major axis moment of inertia, mm <sup>4</sup>
$I_y$	= minor axis moment of inertia of the whole cross-section, mm <sup>4</sup>
$I_{y1}, I_{y2}$	= moment of inertia of upper and lower flanges, respectively, about the $y$ -axis of symmetry, mm <sup>4</sup>
$J$	= St. Venant torsional constant, mm <sup>4</sup>
$j$	= coefficient used in determining moment of inertia of stiffeners
$K$	= effective length factor
$K_x, K_y, K_z$	= effective length factor with respect to $x$ -, $y$ -, or $z$ -axis
$k$	= distance from outer face of flange to toe of flange-to-web fillet, mm
$k_s$	= coefficient related to the slip resistance of a bolted joint; plate buckling coefficient
$k_v$	= shear buckling coefficient
$k_1, k_2$	= buckling coefficients
$L$	= length, mm; span length between simple connections at girder ends, mm; connection length in direction of loading, equal to the distance between the first and last bolts in bolted connections and to the overall length of the weld pattern in welded connections, mm; laterally unsupported distance from one braced location to an adjacent braced location, mm; length of roller or rocker, mm; length of cut-out in a closed cross-section member measured parallel to the longitudinal axis of the member, mm; length of a compression flange between points of lateral restraint, mm
$L_c$	= length of channel shear connector, mm
$L_n$	= length of segment parallel to the force, mm
$\ell$	= length in which warping restraint is developed, mm
$M_L$	= bending moment in beam or girder at SLS due to live load, N•mm
$\Delta M_a$	= factored bending moment at one-quarter point of unbraced segment, N•mm
$\Delta M_b$	= factored bending moment at midpoint of unbraced segment, N•mm
$\Delta M_c$	= factored bending moment at three-quarter point of unbraced segment, N•mm
$M_d$	= bending moment in beam or girder at SLS due to dead load, N•mm
$M_f$	= factored bending moment in member or component at ULS, N•mm
$M_{fb}$	= factored bending moment in transverse beam at ULS, N•mm
$M_{fd}$	= factored bending moment in beam or girder at ULS due to dead load, N•mm
$M_{fl}$	= factored bending moment in beam or girder at ULS due to live load, N•mm
$M_{fr}$	= factored bending moment in longitudinal rib at ULS, N•mm
$M_{fsd}$	= factored bending moment in beam or girder at ULS due to superimposed dead load, N•mm
$M_{fw}$	= factored bending moment in plane of a girder flange due to torsional warping, N•mm
$M_{fx}$	= factored bending moment in member or component about the $x$ -axis of the cross-section at ULS, N•mm
$M_{fy}$	= factored bending moment in member or component about the $y$ -axis of the cross-section at ULS, N•mm
$M_{f1}$	= smaller factored end moment of beam-column at ULS, N•mm

$M_{f2}$	=	larger factored end moment of beam-column at ULS, N•mm
$M_p$	=	plastic moment resistance (= $ZF_y$ ), N•mm
$M_r$	=	factored moment resistance of member or component, N•mm
$M_{rb}$	=	factored moment resistance of transverse beam, N•mm
$M_{rc}$	=	factored moment resistance of composite column, N•mm
$M_{rr}$	=	factored moment resistance of longitudinal rib, N•mm
$M_{rx}$	=	factored moment resistance of member or component about the $x$ -axis of the cross-section, N•mm
$M'_{rx}$	=	reduced factored moment resistance of curved non-composite I-girder, N•mm
$M_{ry}$	=	factored moment resistance of member or component about the $y$ -axis of the cross-section, N•mm
$M_{sd}$	=	bending moment in beam or girder at SLS due to superimposed dead load, N•mm
$M_u$	=	critical elastic moment of a laterally unbraced beam, N•mm
$M_y$	=	yield moment, N•mm
$m$	=	number of faying surfaces or shear planes in a bolted joint (equal to one for bolts in single shear and two for bolts in double shear)
$N$	=	length of bearing of an applied load, mm; number of shear connectors
$N_a$	=	number of additional shear connectors per beam at point of contraflexure
$N_c$	=	specified number of design stress cycles
$N_d$	=	number of design stress cycles experienced for each passage of the design truck (see Table 10.5)
$n$	=	number of equally spaced longitudinal stiffeners in box girders; number of parallel planes of battens; number of bolts; modular ratio, $E_s/E_c$ ; number of studs arranged transversely across a flange at a given location; coefficient for axial buckling resistance
$P$	=	factored force to be transferred by shear connectors, N
$p$	=	pitch of threads, mm; pitch between bolts, mm; reduction factor for multi-lane fatigue loading
$Q$	=	moment of area, about the neutral axis of the composite section, of the transformed compressive concrete area in positive moment regions or in negative moment regions that are prestressed, $\text{mm}^3$ ; for non-prestressed sections in negative moment regions, moment of the transformed area of reinforcement embedded in the concrete, $\text{mm}^3$
$Q_f$	=	factored torsional moment in a member at ULS, N•mm
$Q_r$	=	factored torsional resistance, N•mm
$q_r$	=	factored shear resistance of shear connectors, N
$q_{sr}$	=	range of interface shear, N
$\Delta R$	=	radius of curvature of girder web, mm (see Clause 10.13.6.1); horizontal radius of curvature, mm (see Clause 10.7.4.3); transition radius as shown in Example 12 of Figure 10.6
$R_s$	=	vertical force for proportioning connection of transverse stiffener to longitudinal stiffener in box girders, at ULS, N
$R_v$	=	reduced normal stress factor, taking coexisting warping shear stresses into account
$\Delta R_w$	=	vertical force for proportioning connection of transverse stiffener to web in box girders, at ULS, N (see Clause 10.18.3.2.2); strength reduction factor for multiple orientation fillet welds
$R_1, R_2$	=	non-dimensional width-to-thickness demarcation ratios between yielding, inelastic buckling, and elastic buckling of compression flange; radius of roller or rocker and of groove of supporting plate, respectively, mm

$r$	=	radius of gyration, mm
$r_c$	=	radius of gyration of the concrete area, mm
$r_x$	=	radius of gyration of a member about its strong axis, mm
$r_y$	=	radius of gyration of a member about its weak axis, mm
$r_0$	=	centroidal radius of gyration (see Clause 10.9.3.2), mm
$S$	=	elastic section modulus of steel section, mm <sup>3</sup> ; short-term load, N
$S'$	=	elastic modulus of composite section comprising the steel section, reinforcement, and prestressing steel within the effective width of the slab with respect to the flange or reinforcing steel under consideration, mm <sup>3</sup>
$S_e$	=	effective section modulus, mm <sup>3</sup>
$S_h$	=	elastic modulus of longitudinal stiffener with respect to the base of the stiffener, mm <sup>3</sup>
$S_n, S_{3n}$	=	elastic modulus of section comprising the steel beam or girder and the concrete slab, calculated using a modular ratio of $n$ or $3n$ , respectively, mm <sup>3</sup>
$S_t$	=	section modulus of transverse stiffener, mm <sup>3</sup>
$s$	=	centre-to-centre spacing between successive fastener holes in the line of load, mm; centre-to-centre spacing of each group of shear studs, mm
$T$	=	tension in bolt at SLS, N; total load on column, N
$T_f$	=	factored tensile force in member or component at ULS, N
$T_r$	=	factored tensile resistance of a steel section, member, or component, of reinforcing steel, or of the effective width of a deck, including the longitudinal ribs, N
$T_s$	=	factored tensile resistance of steel section or component, N; minimum service temperature, °C
$T_t$	=	Charpy V-notch test temperature, °C
$T_u$	=	specified minimum tensile resistance, taken as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) for parallel wire strands, the product of the sum of the areas of the individual wires and the specified minimum tensile strength of the wires, N; and</li> <li>(b) for helical strands and wire ropes, the specified minimum tensile resistance established by test, taking into account the actual configuration such as socketing and bending over cable bands, N</li> </ul>
$t$	=	thickness, mm; average thickness of channel shear connector flange, mm; thickness of flange, mm; thickness of end connection angles, mm; thickness of stiffener, mm
$t_b$	=	thickness of beam flange, mm; thickness of bottom flange, mm
$t_c$	=	thickness of concrete slab, mm; thickness of column flange, mm
$t_{de}$	=	effective thickness of deck plate, taking into account the stiffening effect of the surfacing, mm
$t_r$	=	thickness of rib, mm
$t_t$	=	thickness of top flange, mm
$U$	=	factor to account for moment gradient and for second-order effects of axial force acting on the deformed member
$\Delta U_t$	=	efficiency factor
$V$	=	shear in a bolt or bolts at SLS, N
$V_H$	=	horizontal shear between troughs in orthotropic deck bridge due to shear, $V_{LL+I}$ , due to live load and impact, as specified in Table 10.8, N
$V_{LL+I}$	=	shear due to live load and impact, N
$V_f$	=	factored shear force at ULS, N
$V_r$	=	factored shear resistance of member or component, N; shear range, N

$V_s$	= slip resistance at SLS, N
$V_{sr}$	= range of shear force at FLS resulting from passage of CL-W Truck, N
$V_u$	= longitudinal shear in concrete slab of a composite beam, N
$W$	= load level in CL-W, kN
$w$	= web thickness, mm; thickness of channel shear connector web, mm; width of plate, mm
$w_c$	= thickness of column web, mm
$w_n$	= length of a segment, normal to a force, mm
$X$	= curvature correction factor for transverse stiffener requirements
$X_u$	= ultimate strength of weld metal, as rated by electrode classification number, MPa
$x$	= subscript relating to the strong axis of a member
$\bar{x}$	= distance perpendicular to axis of member from the fastener plane to the centroid of the portion of the area of the cross-section under consideration, mm
$x_0$	= $x$ -coordinate of shear centre with respect to centroid, mm
$Y$	= ratio of specified minimum yield point of web steel to specified minimum yield point of stiffener steel
$y$	= subscript relating to the weak axis of a member; design life, years
$y_b$	= distance from centroid of a steel section to bottom fibre of a steel beam or girder, mm
$y'_b$	= distance from centroid of the lower portion of a steel section under tension or compression to bottom fibre of a beam or girder, mm
$y_{bc}$	= distance from plastic neutral axis of a composite section to bottom fibre of a steel beam or girder, mm
$\Delta y_c$	= maximum distance from the neutral axis to the extreme outer fibre of the composite section (if applicable), mm
$\Delta y_0$	= $y$ -coordinate of shear centre with respect to centroid, mm
$\Delta y_s$	= distance from the neutral axis to the extreme outer fibre of the steel section (maximum distance for non-symmetrical sections), mm
$y_t$	= distance from centroid of a steel section to top fibre of a steel beam or girder, mm
$y'_t$	= distance from centroid of the upper portion of a steel section under tension or compression to top fibre of a steel beam or girder, mm
$y_{tc}$	= distance from plastic neutral axis of a composite section to top fibre of a steel beam or girder, mm
$Z$	= plastic section modulus of a steel section, mm <sup>3</sup> ; curvature parameter
$Z_{sr}$	= allowable range of interface shear in an individual shear connector, N
$\beta$	= value derived from a recursive equation, radians (see Clause 10.9.5.5)
$\beta_x$	= coefficient of monosymmetry
$\gamma$	= fatigue life constant
$\Delta \Delta$	= specified camber at any section, mm
$\Delta_{DL}$	= camber at any point along the length of a span
$\Delta \Delta_{SDL}$	= camber at any point along the length $L$ , calculated to compensate for deflection due to dead loads on the composite section (if applicable), mm
$\Delta \Delta_m$	= maximum value of $\Delta_{DL} + \Delta_{SDL}$ within length $L$ , mm
$\Delta_r$	= additional camber for horizontally heat-curved beams, mm
$\theta$	= angle of inclination of web plate of box girders to the vertical, degrees; angle of weld axis to line of action of force, degrees
$\kappa$	= ratio of the smaller factored moment to the larger factored moment at opposite ends of an unbraced length (positive for double curvature and negative for single curvature)

$\lambda$	= non-dimensional slenderness parameter in column formula; slenderness parameter
$\lambda_c$	= slenderness parameter for concrete portion of composite column
$\lambda_e$	= equivalent slenderness parameter
$\rho$	= factor modifying contribution of steel to compressive resistance of composite column
$\rho_{br}, \rho_w$	= curvature correction factors
$\tau, \tau'$	= factors modifying contributions of steel and concrete, respectively, to compressive resistance of composite column
$\phi_b$	= resistance factor for bolts
$\phi_{be}$	= resistance factor for beam web bearing, end
$\phi_{bi}$	= resistance factor for beam web bearing, interior
$\phi_{br}$	= resistance factor for load bearing in bolted connections
$\phi_c$	= resistance factor for concrete
$\phi_r$	= resistance factor for reinforcement
$\phi_s$	= resistance factor for steel
$\phi_{sc}$	= resistance factor for shear connectors
$\phi_{tc}$	= resistance factor for steel cables in tension
$\phi_w$	= resistance factor for welds
$\psi$	= ratio of total cross-sectional area to that of both flanges
$\omega_1$	= coefficient used to determine equivalent uniform bending effect in beam-columns
$\omega_2$	= coefficient to account for increased moment resistance of a laterally unsupported beam segment when subject to a moment gradient

## 10.4 Materials

### 10.4.1 General

Clauses 10.4.2 to 10.4.7 shall apply unless deviations from their requirements are Approved.

The fracture toughness of steel shall meet the requirements of Clause 10.23.3.

Plates provided from coils shall be used only if it can be demonstrated that the levelling process used in manufacturing produces plate with longitudinal residual stresses that are balanced about mid-thickness. In addition, after levelling, plates shall conform to the flatness tolerances specified in CSA G40.20, and the elongation and impact properties, after testing in accordance with CSA G40.20, shall be to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

### Δ 10.4.2 Structural steel

Structural steel shall conform to CSA G40.21, except as provided below. The modulus of elasticity of structural steel,  $E_s$ , shall be taken as 200 000 MPa and the shear modulus of elasticity of structural steel,  $G_s$ , shall be taken as 77 000 MPa.

Weathering steel members shall be of Type A atmospheric corrosion-resistant steel as specified in CSA G40.21.

Fracture-critical members and primary tension members shall be of Type AT, Type WT, or Type QT steel as specified in CSA G40.21.

ASTM A 588/A 588M steel may be substituted for CSA G40.21 Grade 350A steel. ASTM A 588/A 588M steel may be substituted for CSA G40.21 Grade 350AT steel when the Charpy impact energy requirements are verified by the submission of test documentation.

### 10.4.3 Cast steel

Cast steel shall comply with ASTM A 27/A 27M, ASTM A 148/A 148M, or ASTM A 486/A 486M.

#### **10.4.4 Stainless steel**

Stainless steel shall comply with ASTM A 167.

#### **Δ 10.4.5 Bolts**

Bolts shall comply with ASTM A 325, ASTM A 325M, ASTM A 490, ASTM A 490M, ASTM F 1852, or ASTM F 2280. Bolts less than M16 or 5/8 inch in diameter shall not be used in structural applications.

ASTM A 325/A 325M or ASTM A 490/A 490M high-strength bolts for use with uncoated corrosion-resistant steel shall be Type 3 unless corrosion protection is provided by an approved protection system. ASTM A 490 and A 490M bolts shall not be galvanized or plated.

#### **Δ 10.4.6 Welding electrodes**

Except as permitted by Clause 10.23.4.5, welding electrodes, electrode/gas, or electrode/flux combinations shall be low hydrogen (i.e., a level of H16 or less) and shall comply with CSA W47.1, CAN/CSA-W48, and CSA W59.

#### **Δ 10.4.7 Stud shear connectors**

Material requirements for stud shear connectors and the qualification of the shear connector base shall comply with CSA W59, Appendix H. Only studs of Type B shall be used.

### **10.4.8 Cables**

#### **10.4.8.1 Bright wire**

Bright wire shall comply with ASTM A 510.

#### **10.4.8.2 Galvanized wire**

Galvanized wire shall comply with ASTM A 641/A 641M.

#### **10.4.8.3 Bridge strand and wire rope**

Bridge strand shall comply with ASTM A 586. Wire rope shall comply with ASTM A 603.

#### **Δ 10.4.9 High-strength bars**

High-strength bars shall be used only with the approval of the Regulatory Authority and shall comply with ASTM A 722/A 722M. The Engineer shall specify specific notch toughness requirements based on the intended use.

#### **10.4.10 Galvanizing and metallizing**

Galvanizing shall comply with CAN/CSA-G164 and CSA G189. Zinc metallizing shall comply with CSA G189.

#### **10.4.11 Identification**

##### **10.4.11.1 Identified steels**

The specifications of the materials and products used, including type or grade if applicable, shall be identified by

- (a) mill test certificates or manufacturer's certificates satisfactorily correlated to the materials or products to which they pertain; or
- (b) legible markings on the material or product made by the manufacturer in accordance with the applicable material or product standard.

Otherwise, Clause 10.4.11.2 shall apply.



**Δ 10.4.11.2 Unidentified steels**

Structural steels not identified as specified in Clause 10.4.11.1 shall not be used unless tested by an Approved testing laboratory in accordance with CSA G40.20/G40.21. The results of such testing, taking into account both mechanical and chemical properties, shall form the basis for classifying the steels as to specification. Once classified, the specified minimum values for steel at the applicable specification grade shall be used for design.

**10.4.12 Coefficient of thermal expansion**

The coefficient of linear thermal expansion for steel shall be taken as  $12 \times 10^{-6}/^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

**Δ 10.4.13 Pins and rollers**

Pins and rollers greater than 175 mm in diameter shall be forged and annealed or forged and normalized. Pins and rollers 175 mm or less in diameter shall be forged and annealed, forged and normalized, or of cold-finished carbon-steel shafting.

**10.5 Design theory and assumptions****10.5.1 General**

Structural members and components shall be proportioned to satisfy the requirements for the ultimate, serviceability, and fatigue limit states.

**10.5.2 Ultimate limit states**

The factored resistances specified in this Section shall be equal to or greater than the effect of factored loads specified in Section 3 for all relevant ULS considerations, including strength, rupture, bending, buckling, lateral-torsional buckling, sliding, overturning, and uplift.

**10.5.3 Serviceability limit states****10.5.3.1 General**

The SLS considerations shall be those of deflection, yielding, slipping of bolted joints, and vibration.

**Δ 10.5.3.2 Deflection**

The requirements of Clause 10.16.4 and Section 3 shall apply.

**10.5.3.3 Yielding**

Members of all classes of sections shall be proportioned so that general yielding does not occur. Localized limited yielding shall be permitted.

**10.5.3.4 Slipping of bolted joints**

The requirements of Clause 10.18 shall apply.

**10.5.3.5 Vibration**

The requirements of Section 3 shall apply.

**Δ 10.5.3.6 Transportability**

The Engineer shall consider transportability for components of unusual geometry, weight, or dimensions.

**10.5.4 Fatigue limit state**

The requirements of Clause 10.17 shall apply.

### 10.5.5 Fracture control

The requirements of Clause 10.23 shall apply.

### 10.5.6 Seismic requirements

The requirements of Clause 4.8 shall apply.

### Δ 10.5.7 Resistance factors

Resistance factors shall be taken as follows:

- (a) flexure:  $\phi_s = 0.95$ ;
- (b) shear:  $\phi_s = 0.95$ ;
- (c) compression:  $\phi_s = 0.90$ ;
- (d) tension:  $\phi_s = 0.95$ ;
- (e) torsion:  $\phi_s = 0.90$ ;
- (f) tension in cables:  $\phi_{tc} = 0.55$ ;
- (g) reinforcing steel in composite construction:  $\phi_r = 0.90$ ;
- (h) concrete in composite construction:  $\phi_c$  as specified in Section 8;
- (i) bolts:  $\phi_b = 0.80$ ;
- (j) load bearing in bolted connections:  $\phi_{br} = 0.80$ ;
- (k) welds:  $\phi_w = 0.67$ ;
- (l) shear connectors:  $\phi_{sc} = 0.85$ ;
- (m) beam web bearing, interior:  $\phi_{bi} = 0.80$ ; and
- (n) beam web bearing, end:  $\phi_{be} = 0.75$ .

### 10.5.8 Analysis

Unless other methods are Approved, the methods of analysis used shall be as specified in this Section and Section 5. The design of supporting members shall provide for the effect of any significant moment or eccentricity arising from the manner in which a beam, girder, or truss is connected or supported.

### 10.5.9 Design lengths of members

#### 10.5.9.1 Span lengths

Span lengths shall be taken as the distance between centres of bearings or other points of support.

#### 10.5.9.2 Compression members

##### 10.5.9.2.1 General

The design of a compression member shall be based on its effective length,  $KL$ .

The unbraced length,  $L$ , shall be taken as the length of the compression member measured centre-to-centre of restraints.

The unbraced length may differ for different cross-sectional axes of a member. For the bottom level of a multi-level bent or for a single-level bent,  $L$  shall be measured from the top of the base plate.

The effective length factor,  $K$ , shall be as specified in Clauses 10.5.9.2.2, 10.5.9.2.3, or 10.5.9.2.4, depending on the potential failure modes and whether failure is by buckling or in-plane bending.

##### 10.5.9.2.2 Failure modes involving in-plane bending

The effective length shall be taken as the actual unbraced length, i.e.,  $K = 1.0$ , for beam-columns that would fail by in-plane bending, but only if, when applicable, the sway effects have been included in the analysis of the structure to determine the end moments and forces acting on the beam-columns.

### 10.5.9.2.3 Failure modes involving buckling

The effective length for axially loaded columns that would fail by buckling and for beam-columns that would fail by out-of-plane lateral torsional buckling shall be based on the rotational and translational restraint afforded at the ends of the unbraced length.

#### Δ 10.5.9.2.4 Compression members in trusses

The effective length for members that would fail by in-plane bending shall be taken as the actual unbraced length, i.e.,  $K = 1.0$ . The effective length for members that would fail by buckling shall be based on the rotational and translational restraint afforded at the ends of the unbraced length. For half-through or pony-truss spans, the buckling load of the compression chord shall be determined in accordance with Clause 10.14.3.6.

## 10.6 Durability

### 10.6.1 General

The requirements of Clauses 10.6.2 to 10.6.7 shall apply unless superseded by the requirements of the Regulatory Authority.

### 10.6.2 Corrosion as a deterioration mechanism

The deterioration mechanisms considered for steel components shall include corrosion.

### 10.6.3 Corrosion protection

Corrosion protection shall be provided by alloying elements in the steel, protective coatings, or other Approved means. The type and degree of corrosion protection to be provided shall be shown on the Plans.

### 10.6.4 Superstructure components

#### 10.6.4.1 General

The minimum corrosion protection shall be as specified in Table 10.1 for the applicable superstructure component and environmental exposure condition.

#### Δ 10.6.4.2 Structural steel

Structural steel, including diaphragms and bracing but excluding surfaces in contact with concrete and the contact surfaces of bolted joints, shall be coated with an Approved coating system for a minimum distance of 3000 mm from the ends of girders at expansion joints.

Surfaces of girders that are subject to water runoff from the deck shall either be coated with an Approved coating system or the cross-sections shall be increased to account for the estimated loss of section over the design life of the structure.

#### 10.6.4.3 Cables, ropes, and strands

All wires in the cables of suspension bridges and the stay cables of cable-stayed bridges shall be hot-dip galvanized. Suspension bridge and arch bridge hangers and other ropes or strands shall be hot-dip galvanized.

The completed main cables of suspension bridges shall also be treated with zinc dust paste and wrapped with soft-annealed galvanized wire.

The stay cables of cable-stayed bridges shall also be encased in a tube or sheath filled with an Approved grease or wax.

#### **10.6.4.4 High-strength bars**

When not sheathed and grouted, high-strength bars shall be hot-dip galvanized.

#### **10.6.4.5 Steel decks**

In marine environments and in areas where roadways are likely to be salted for winter maintenance, steel decks, except for open grid decks, shall be waterproofed and provided with a skid-resistant wearing surface.

#### **10.6.5 Other components**

The minimum protective measures for steel components not covered by Clauses 10.6.4.2 to 10.6.4.5 other than superstructure components shall be as specified in Table 10.2 for the applicable environmental exposure condition.

Stainless steel inserts in submerged members shall be electrically connected to the reinforcement.

**Table 10.1**  
**Corrosion protection for superstructure components**  
 (See Clause 10.6.4.1.)

ly. Storage, distribution or use on network prohibited

Component	Environmental exposure condition									
	No direct chlorides			Air-borne chlorides or light industrial atmosphere			Heavy industrial atmosphere			Marine
	Wet, rarely dry	Dry, rarely wet	Cyclical wet/dry	Wet, rarely dry	Dry, rarely wet	Cyclical wet/dry	Wet, rarely dry	Dry, rarely wet	Cyclical wet/dry	
All superstructures (minimum)	Coat	Uncoated weathering steel	Uncoated weathering steel	Coat	Uncoated weathering steel	Uncoated weathering steel	Coat	Investigate	Investigate	Coat
Structure with clearance of less than 3 m over stagnant water or less than 1.5 m over fresh water	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat
Structure over depressed roadways with tunnel effect	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat
Open grid decks	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize
Structure supporting open grid decks	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat
Faying surfaces of joints	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Cables, ropes, and strands (see also Clause 10.6.4.3)	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize



ly. Storage, distribution or use of network products

**Table 10.2**  
**Corrosion protection for other components**  
(See Clause 10.6.5.)

Component	Environmental exposure condition											
	No direct chlorides			Air-borne chlorides or light industrial atmosphere			Heavy industrial atmosphere			Marine or de-icing runoff	In fresh water	In ground-water
	Wet, rarely dry	Dry, rarely wet	Cyclical wet/dry	Wet, rarely dry	Dry, rarely wet	Cyclical wet/dry	Wet, rarely dry	Dry, rarely wet	Cyclical wet/dry			
Substructures	Coat	Uncoated weathering steel	Uncoated weathering steel	Coat	Uncoated weathering steel	Uncoated weathering steel	Coated	Investigate site conditions	Investigate site conditions	Coated	Uncoated	Uncoated
Sheet piling	Coat or increase section thickness	Uncoated	Coat or increase section thickness	Coat or increase section thickness	Uncoated	Coat or increase section thickness	Coat or increase section thickness	Coat or increase section thickness	Coat or increase section thickness	Coat or increase section thickness	Uncoated	Uncoated
Light poles, luminaires, and sign support structures	Galvanize	Uncoated weathering steel	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Investigate site conditions	Investigate site conditions	Investigate site conditions	Investigate site conditions	—	—
Deck drains	Galvanize	Uncoated weathering steel	Uncoated weathering steel	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	—	—
Expansion joints	Galvanize or metallize	Galvanize or metallize	Galvanize or metallize	Galvanize or metallize	Galvanize or metallize	Galvanize or metallize	Galvanize or metallize	Galvanize or metallize	Galvanize or metallize	Galvanize or metallize	—	—
Bearings (excluding stainless steel and faying surfaces)	Galvanize, metallize, or coat	Galvanize, metallize, or coat	Galvanize, metallize, or coat	Galvanize, metallize, or coat	Galvanize, metallize, or coat	Galvanize, metallize, or coat	Galvanize, metallize, or coat	Galvanize, metallize, or coat	Galvanize, metallize, or coat	Galvanize, metallize, or coat	—	—
Faying surfaces of bearing assemblies (excluding stainless steel and Teflon®)	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	Coat	—	—
Moving components or rockers, roller bearings, and pins	Grease	Grease	Grease	Grease	Grease	Grease	Grease	Grease	Grease	Grease	—	—
Railings	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	—	—
Utility supports and hardware	Galvanize or epoxy coat	Galvanize or epoxy coat	Galvanize or epoxy coat	Galvanize or epoxy coat	Galvanize or epoxy coat	Galvanize or epoxy coat	Galvanize or epoxy coat	Galvanize or epoxy coat	Galvanize or epoxy coat	Galvanize or epoxy coat	—	—
Components of mechanically stabilized earth structures, bin walls, and gabions	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize	Galvanize

### Δ 10.6.6 Areas inaccessible after erection

Areas inaccessible after erection shall be marked in the Plans and shall be given an Approved protective coating before erection.

The inside surfaces of sealed hollow structural sections and sealed orthotropic deck ribs need not be protected.

### 10.6.7 Detailing for durability

#### 10.6.7.1 Drip bars

Drip bars shall be secured to the bottom flanges of plate girders near expansion joints.

#### 10.6.7.2 Interior bracing

Interior bracing shall be detailed to allow access for inspection and maintenance over the full length of the bridge.

#### 10.6.7.3 Angles and tees

Angles and tees exposed to the environment shall be placed with their vertical legs or webs extending downward wherever practical.

#### 10.6.7.4 End floor beams and end diaphragms

End floor beams and end diaphragms under expansion joints shall be arranged to permit coating and future maintenance of surfaces that are exposed to surface runoff. The end diaphragms of box girders shall be detailed to prevent ingress of water into the boxes.

#### 10.6.7.5 Overpasses

Girder sections of overpasses over expressways and over urban streets with traffic speed limits greater than 70 km/h shall be detailed to minimize the detrimental effects of salt spray.

#### 10.6.7.6 Pockets and depressions

Pockets and depressions that could retain water shall be avoided, provided with effective drainage, or filled with water-repellent material.

## Δ 10.7 Design details

### Δ 10.7.1 General

Members and connections shall be detailed to minimize their susceptibility to corrosion, fatigue, brittle fracture, and lamellar tearing.

### 10.7.2 Minimum thickness of steel

The minimum thickness of steel shall be as follows:

- (a) gusset plates for main members and all material in end floor beams and end diaphragms and their connections: 10 mm;
- (b) closed sections, e.g., tubular members or closed ribs in orthotropic decks that are sealed against entry of moisture: 6 mm;
- (c) webs of rolled shapes: 6 mm;
- (d) webs of plate girders and box girders: 10 mm; and
- (e) other structural steel except for fillers, railings, and components not intended to resist loads: 8 mm.



### 10.7.3 Floor beams and diaphragms at piers and abutments

Floor beams and diaphragms at piers and abutments shall be designed to facilitate jacking of the superstructure unless the main longitudinal members are designed to be jacked directly.

### 10.7.4 Camber

#### 10.7.4.1 Design

Girders with spans 25 m long or longer shall be cambered to compensate at least for dead load deflections and to suit the highway profile grade. For composite beams, an allowance shall also be made for the effects of creep and shrinkage of the concrete.

The Plans shall show

- (a) the deflection of the girders due to the dead load of the steel alone; and
- (b) the deflection due to the full dead load, including that of the steel, slab, barriers, sidewalks, and wearing surface.

For spans shorter than 25 m, the deflections and the profile of the concrete deck slab over the beams may be accommodated by increasing the slab thickness over the beams in lieu of providing a camber, if specified on the Plans.

#### 10.7.4.2 Fabrication

Shop drawings shall show the total camber diagram to be used as a web cutting profile. The camber diagram shall include compensation for the deflection due to full dead load, an allowance for fabrication and welding distortion, and an allowance (if applicable) for the vertical alignment of the highway.

#### △ 10.7.4.3 Horizontally heat-curved rolled or welded beams

For rolled beams and welded I-section plate girders that are heat curved to obtain a horizontal curvature, additional camber shall be added to compensate for the non-recoverable vertical deflection that occurs during construction and in service. The total camber shall be calculated as

$$\Delta = \left( \frac{\Delta_{DL} + \Delta_{SDL}}{\Delta_m} \right) [\Delta_m + \Delta_r]$$

where

$$\Delta_r = \frac{0.02L^2F_y}{E_s} \left[ \frac{305\,000 - R}{260\,000} \right] \left( \frac{y_s + y_c}{y_s y_c} \right) \geq 0$$

where

- $\Delta$  = specified camber at any section, mm
- $\Delta_{DL}$  = camber at any point along length  $L$ , to compensate for deflection due to dead loads on the steel section only, mm
- $\Delta_{SDL}$  = camber at any point along length  $L$ , to compensate for deflection due to dead loads on the composite section (if applicable), mm
- $\Delta_m$  = maximum value of  $\Delta_{DL} + \Delta_{SDL}$  within length  $L$ , mm
- $\Delta_r$  = additional camber, mm
- $L$  = span length for simple spans, mm  
= distance between the points of dead load contraflexure for continuous spans (see Figure A5.1.1), mm
- $F_y$  = specified minimum yield stress of flanges, MPa
- $E_s$  = modulus of elasticity of steel, MPa
- $R$  = horizontal radius of curvature, mm

- $y_s$  = distance from the neutral axis to the extreme outer fibre of the steel section (maximum distance for non-symmetrical sections), mm
- $y_c$  = maximum distance from the neutral axis to the extreme outer fibre of the composite section (if applicable), mm

### 10.7.5 Welded attachments

All attachments to primary tension and fracture-critical members, including transverse and longitudinal stiffeners, shall be connected by continuous welds. Longitudinal stiffeners shall be spliced by complete joint penetration groove welds.

## 10.8 Tension members

### 10.8.1 General

#### 10.8.1.1 Proportioning

Tension members shall be proportioned on the basis of their gross and effective net cross-sectional areas and an examination of block tearout of the material. In cases where not all portions of a cross-section are directly connected to the adjoining elements, an effective net area shall be calculated as an allowance for shear lag.

#### 10.8.1.2 Slenderness

The slenderness ratio of a tension member shall not exceed 200 unless otherwise Approved.

#### 10.8.1.3 Cross-sectional areas

##### Δ 10.8.1.3.1 General

The gross and net cross-sectional areas to be used in calculating the resistance of a tension member shall be as follows:

- (a) The gross cross-sectional area,  $A_{gv}$ , shall be the sum of the products of the thickness times the gross width of each element in the cross-section, measured perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the member.
- (b) The net cross-sectional area,  $A_n$ , shall be determined by summing the net areas of each segment along a potential path of minimum resistance, calculated as follows:
  - (i)  $A_n = w_n t$  for any segment normal to the force (i.e., in direct tension);
  - (ii)  $A_n = w_n t + s^2 t / 4g$  for any segment inclined to the force

where

$w_n$  = net width

= gross width – sum of hole diameters in the gross width

Deductions for fastener holes shall be made using a hole diameter 2 mm greater than the specified hole diameter for punched holes. This allowance shall be waived for drilled holes or holes that are subpunched and reamed to the specified hole diameter.

##### Δ 10.8.1.3.2 Effective net area accounting for shear lag effects

In general, each portion of the cross-section of a tension member shall be connected at its ends with sufficient fasteners (bolts or welds) to transmit the load attributable to the portion being connected. Where this is not practicable, an effective net area shall be calculated as

$$A_{ne} = A_n \left( 1 - \frac{\bar{x}}{L} \right)$$

where

$\bar{x}$  = distance perpendicular to axis of member from the fastener plane to the centroid of the portion of the area of the cross-section under consideration.

In the absence of a more precise method, the effective net area for shear lag shall be established as described in Clauses 10.8.1.3.2.1 to 10.8.1.3.2.5.

#### Δ 10.8.1.3.2.1 Bolted tension elements

When fasteners transmit load to each of the cross-sectional elements of a member in tension in proportion to their respective areas, the effective net area is equal to the net area, i.e.,  $A_{ne} = A_n$ .

When bolts transmit load to some, but not all, of the cross-sectional elements and when the critical net area includes the net area of unconnected elements, the effective net area shall be taken as follows:

- (a) for WWF, W, M, or S shapes with flange widths at least two-thirds the depth and for structural tees cut from those shapes, when only the flanges are connected with three or more transverse lines of fasteners:  $A_{ne} = 0.90A_n$ ;
- (b) for angles connected by only one leg with
  - (i) four or more transverse lines of fasteners:  $A_{ne} = 0.80A_n$ ; and
  - (ii) fewer than four transverse lines of fasteners:  $A_{ne} = 0.60A_n$ ; and
- (c) for all other structural shapes connected with
  - (i) three or more transverse lines of fasteners:  $A_{ne} = 0.85A_n$ ; and
  - (ii) with two transverse lines of fasteners:  $A_{ne} = 0.75A_n$ .

#### Δ 10.8.1.3.2.2 Welded tension elements

When a tension load is transmitted by welds, the effective net area shall be computed as

$$A_{ne} = A_{n1} + A_{n2} + A_{n3}$$

where

$A_{n1}$ ,  $A_{n2}$ ,  $A_{n3}$  = net areas of the connected plate elements subject to one of the following methods of load transfer:

- (a) for elements connected by transverse welds,  $A_{n1}$ :

$$A_{n1} = wt$$

- (b) for elements connected by longitudinal welds along two parallel edges,  $A_{n2}$ :

- (i) when  $L \geq 2w$ :

$$A_{n2} = 1.00 wt$$

- (ii) when  $2w > L \geq w$ :

$$A_{n2} = 0.50 wt + 0.25 Lt$$

- (iii) when  $w > L$ :

$$A_{n2} = 0.75 Lt$$

where

$L$  = average length of welds on the two edges, mm

$w$  = plate width (distance between welds), mm

- (c) for elements connected by a single longitudinal weld,  $A_{n3}$ :

- (i) when  $L \geq w$ :

$$A_{n3} = \left(1 - \frac{\bar{x}}{L}\right) wt$$

- (ii) when  $w > L$ :

$$A_{n3} = 0.50 Lt$$

where

$\bar{x}$  = eccentricity of the weld with respect to the centroid of the connected element, mm

$L$  = length of weld in the direction of the loading, mm

The outstanding leg of an angle is considered connected by the (single) line of weld along the heel.

#### Δ 10.8.1.3.2.3 Rational analysis

Larger values of the effective net area may be used if justified by tests or rational analysis.

#### Δ 10.8.1.3.2.4 Block shear — Tension member, beam, and plate connections

The factored resistance for a potential failure involving the simultaneous development of tensile and shear component areas shall be taken as follows:

$$T_r = \phi_u [U_t A_n F_u + 0.6 A_{gv} F_m]$$

where

$U_t$  = efficiency factor

= 1.0 when the failure pattern is symmetrical and the load concentric with the block.  
Otherwise,  $U_t$  is obtained from the following Table for specific applications.

Connection type	$U_t$
Flange connected tees	1.0
Angles connected by one leg and stem connected tees	0.6
Coped beams — one bolt line	0.9
Coped beams — two bolt lines	0.3

$A_n$  is the net area in tension as defined in Clause 10.8.1.3.1 and  $A_{gv}$  is the gross area in shear, taken as the sum of the products of the thickness times the gross length of each segment of the block shear failure surface parallel to the applied force.

$$F_m = \frac{(F_y + F_u)}{2} \text{ for } F_y < 485 \text{ MPa, otherwise, } F_m = F_y$$

**Note:** The term  $0.6A_{gv}F_m$  in the above equation for  $T_r$  may be used to predict bolt tear out capacity along two parallel planes adjacent to the bolt hole.

#### Δ 10.8.1.3.2.5 Angles

For angles, the gross width shall be the sum of the widths of the legs minus the thickness. The gauge for holes in opposite legs shall be the sum of the gauges from the heel of the angle minus the thickness.

#### 10.8.1.4 Pin-connected members in tension

In pin-connected members in tension, the net area,  $A_n$ , across the pin hole and normal to the axis of the member shall be at least 1.33 times the cross-sectional area of the body of the member. The net area beyond the pin hole of any section on either side of the axis of the member, measured at an angle of 45° or less to the axis of the member, shall be not less than 0.9 times the cross-sectional area of the member.

The distance from the edge of the pin hole to the edge of the member, measured transverse to the axis of the member, shall not exceed four times the thickness of the material at the pin hole.

The diameter of a pin hole shall be not more than 1 mm larger than the diameter of the pin.

**Δ 10.8.2 Axial tensile resistance**

The factored tensile resistance,  $T_r$ , shall be taken as the least of

- (a)  $\phi_s A_g F_y$ ;
- (b)  $0.85 \phi_s A_n F_u$ ; and
- (c)  $0.85 \phi_s A_{ne} F_u$ .

**10.8.3 Axial tension and bending**

Members subjected to bending moments and axial tensile forces shall satisfy the following relationship:

$$\frac{T_f}{T_r} + \frac{M_f}{M_r} \leq 1.0$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} M_r &= \phi_s M_p \text{ for Class 1 and 2 sections} \\ &= \phi_s M_y \text{ for Class 3 sections} \end{aligned}$$

$$\frac{M_f}{M_r} - \frac{T_f Z}{M_r A} \leq 1.0 \text{ for Class 1 and 2 sections}$$

$$\frac{M_f}{M_r} - \frac{T_f S}{M_r A} \leq 1.0 \text{ for Class 3 sections}$$

**Note:** Section classes are specified in Clause 10.9.2.1.  $M_r$  is specified in Clause 10.10.2 for Class 1 and 2 sections and in Clause 10.10.3 for Class 3 sections.

**10.8.4 Tensile resistance of cables**

The factored axial tensile resistance,  $T_r$ , shall be taken as

$$T_r = \phi_{tc} T_u$$

**10.9 Compression members****10.9.1 General****10.9.1.1 Cross-sectional area**

Compression members shall be proportioned based on the gross area of the cross-section calculated by summing the products of the thickness and gross width of each element taken normal to the axis of the member.

**10.9.1.2 Method of calculation**

Provided that the requirements of Table 10.3 are met, the expressions for compressive resistance in Clause 10.9.3 shall apply. Flexural buckling with respect to the principal axes of the cross-section and torsional or flexural-torsional buckling shall be considered. Methods for calculating the compressive resistance of members, other than those specified in Clause 10.9.3, shall require Approval.

**10.9.1.3 Slenderness**

The slenderness ratio shall not exceed 120 for main compression members or 160 for secondary and bracing members.

## 10.9.2 Width-to-thickness ratio of elements in compression

### 10.9.2.1 General

Structural sections shall be designated as Class 1, 2, 3, or 4 depending on the width-to-thickness ratio of the elements that make up the cross-section and on the conditions of loading. A Class 1 section is one that will attain the plastic moment capacity, adjusted for the presence of axial force if necessary, and permit subsequent redistribution of bending moment. A Class 2 section is one that will attain the plastic moment capacity, adjusted for the presence of axial force if necessary, but not necessarily permit subsequent moment redistribution. A Class 3 section is one that will attain the yield moment capacity, adjusted for the presence of axial force if necessary. A Class 4 section is one in which the slenderness of the elements making up the cross-section exceeds the limits of Class 3. The capacity of a Class 4 section shall be treated on a case-by-case basis in accordance with this Code.

The width-to-thickness ratios of elements subject to compression shall not exceed the limits specified in Table 10.3.

Δ

**Table 10.3**  
**Width-to-thickness ratio of elements in compression**  
(See Clauses 10.9.1.2, 10.9.2.1, 10.10.2.1, and 10.10.3.1.)

Description of element	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3‡
Legs of angles and elements supported along one edge, except as covered elsewhere in this Table	—	—	$b/t \leq 200/(\sqrt{F_y})$
Angles in continuous contact with other elements; plate girder stiffeners	—	—	$b/t \leq 200/(\sqrt{F_y})$
Stems of T-sections	$b/t \leq 145/(\sqrt{F_y})^*$	$b/t \leq 170/(\sqrt{F_y})^*$	$b/t \leq 340/(\sqrt{F_y})$
Flanges of I- or T-sections; plates projecting from compression elements; outstanding legs of pairs of angles in continuous contact†	$b/t \leq 145/(\sqrt{F_y})$	$b/t \leq 170/(\sqrt{F_y})$	$b/t \leq 200/(\sqrt{F_y})$
Flanges of channels	—	—	$b/t \leq 200/(\sqrt{F_y})$
Flanges of rectangular hollow structural shapes	$b/t \leq 420/(\sqrt{F_y})$	$b/t \leq 525/(\sqrt{F_y})$	$b/t \leq 670/(\sqrt{F_y})$
Flanges of box girder sections; flange cover plates and diaphragm plates between lines of fasteners or welds	$b/t \leq 525/(\sqrt{F_y})$	$b/t \leq 525/(\sqrt{F_y})$	$b/t \leq 670/(\sqrt{F_y})$
Perforated cover plates	—	—	$b/t \leq 840/(\sqrt{F_y})$
Webs in axial compression	$h/w \leq 670/(\sqrt{F_y})$	$h/w \leq 670/(\sqrt{F_y})$	$h/w \leq 670/(\sqrt{F_y})$
Webs in flexural compression	$h/w \leq 1100/(\sqrt{F_y})$	$h/w \leq 1700/(\sqrt{F_y})$	$h/w \leq 1900/(\sqrt{F_y})$
Webs in combined flexural and axial compression	$\frac{h}{w} \leq \frac{1100}{\sqrt{F_y}} \left[ 1 - 0.39 \frac{C_f}{C_y} \right]$	$\frac{h}{w} \leq \frac{1700}{\sqrt{F_y}} \left[ 1 - 0.61 \frac{C_f}{C_y} \right]$	$\frac{h}{w} \leq \frac{1900}{\sqrt{F_y}} \left[ 1 - 0.65 \frac{C_f}{C_y} \right]$
Circular and multi-sided hollow sections in axial compression	—	—	$\frac{D}{t} \leq \frac{23\,000}{F_y}$
Circular and multi-sided hollow sections in flexural compression	$\frac{D}{t} \leq \frac{13\,000}{F_y}$	$\frac{D}{t} \leq \frac{18\,000}{F_y}$	$\frac{D}{t} \leq \frac{66\,000}{F_y}$

\*Class 1 and 2 sections subjected to flexure having an axis of symmetry in the plane of loading unless the effects of asymmetry of the section have been included in the analysis.

†Can be considered a Class 1 or 2 section, as applicable, only if angles are continuously connected by adequate mechanical fasteners or welds and there is an axis of symmetry in the plane of loading.

‡A Class 4 section is a section that exceeds the limits of a Class 3 section.

### 10.9.2.2 Elements supported along one edge

For elements supported along only one edge that is parallel to the direction of the compressive force, the width,  $b$ , shall be taken as follows:

- (a) for plates: the distance from the free edge to the line of bolts or welds;
- (b) for legs of angles, flanges of channels and zees, or stems of tees: the full nominal dimension; and
- (c) for flanges of I-shapes and tees: one-half of the flange width.

### 10.9.2.3 Elements supported along two edges

For elements supported along two edges that are parallel to the direction of the compressive force, the width,  $b$  or  $h$ , as applicable, shall be taken as follows:

- (a) for flange or diaphragm plates in built-up sections,  $b$  shall be taken as the distance between adjacent lines of bolts or lines of welds;
- (b) for the sides of rectangular hollow structural sections,  $b$  or  $h$  shall be taken as the clear distance between edge-supporting elements less two wall thicknesses;
- (c) for webs of built-up sections,  $h$  shall be taken as the distance between the nearest lines of bolts connecting either edge of the web or as the clear distance between flanges when welds are used; and
- (d) for webs of rolled sections,  $h$  shall be taken as the clear distance between flanges.

### 10.9.2.4 Thickness

In all cases, the thickness of elements shall be taken as the nominal thickness. For tapered flanges, the thickness shall be taken as that at the midpoint of the element.

### 10.9.2.5 Multi-sided hollow sections

For multi-sided hollow sections that approximate a circle,  $D$  shall be taken as the diameter of the circle that inscribes the outside of the midpoint of the flats of the section.

## 10.9.3 Axial compressive resistance

### Δ 10.9.3.1 Flexural buckling

The factored axial compressive resistance,  $C_r$ , of a member conforming to the limitations specified in Clauses 10.9.1 and 10.9.2 shall be taken as

$$C_r = \phi_s A F_y (1 + \lambda^{2n})^{-1/n}$$

where

$$\lambda = \frac{KL}{r} \sqrt{\frac{F_y}{\pi^2 E_s}}$$

$n = 1.34$ , except for welded H-shapes with flame-cut flange edges and hollow structural sections manufactured in accordance with CSA G40.20, Class H (i.e., hot-formed or cold-formed stress-relieved sections), where  $n = 2.24$

### 10.9.3.2 Torsional or flexural-torsional buckling

The torsional or flexural-torsional buckling resistance of asymmetric, singly symmetric, and cruciform sections shall be calculated by using  $n = 1.34$  and replacing  $\lambda$  in Clause 10.9.3.1 by  $\lambda_e$ , as follows:

$$\lambda_e = \sqrt{F_y / F_e}$$



## 10.9.5 Composite columns

### 10.9.5.1 General

The requirements of Clause 10.9.5 shall apply to composite columns consisting of steel hollow structural sections completely filled with concrete. The type of concrete, its strength, and its other properties shall comply with Section 8.

### Δ 10.9.5.2 Application

Hollow structural sections designated as Class 1, 2, or 3 sections shall be assumed to carry compressive load as composite columns. Class 4 hollow structural sections that are completely filled with concrete and are designed as composite columns shall have, for walls of rectangular sections, width-to-thickness ratios that do not exceed  $1350/\sqrt{F_y}$ , and for circular sections, outside diameter-to-thickness ratios of circular sections that do not exceed  $28\,000/F_y$ .

### 10.9.5.3 Axial load on concrete

The axial load assumed to be carried by the concrete at the top level of a column shall be only that portion applied by direct bearing on the concrete. A base plate or similar means shall be provided for load transfer at the bottom.

### Δ 10.9.5.4 Compressive resistance

The factored compressive resistance of a composite column,  $C_{rc}$ , shall be taken as

$$C_{rc} = \tau C_r + \tau' C_r'$$

where

$C_r$  = the value specified in Clause 10.9.3.1

$$C_r' = 0.85\phi_c f_c' A_c \lambda_c^{-2} \left[ \sqrt{1 + 0.25\lambda_c^{-4}} - 0.5\lambda_c^{-2} \right]$$

where

$$\lambda_c = \frac{KL}{r_c} \sqrt{\frac{f_c'}{\pi^2 E_c}}$$

$E_c$  = initial elastic modulus for concrete, taking into consideration the effects of long-term loading for normal weight concrete, with  $f_c'$  expressed in megapascals

$$= 2500(1 + S/T)\sqrt{f_c'}$$

where

$S$  = short-term load

$T$  = total load on the column

$\tau = \tau' = 1.0$ ; except for circular hollow sections with a height-to-diameter ratio ( $L/D$ ) of less than 25, for which

$$\tau = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \rho + \rho^2}}$$

and

$$\tau' = 1 + \left[ \frac{25\rho^2\tau}{D/t} \right] \left[ \frac{F_y}{0.85f_c'} \right]$$

where

$$\rho = 0.02(25 - L/D)$$

### 10.9.5.5 Bending resistance

The factored bending resistance,  $M_{rc}$ , of a composite concrete-filled hollow structural section shall be taken as

$$M_{rc} = C_r e + C'_r e'$$

where

(a) for a rectangular hollow structural section:

$$\begin{aligned} C_r &= \frac{\phi_s A_s F_y - C'_r}{2} \\ C'_r &= \phi_c a (b - 2t) f'_c \\ C_r + C'_r &= T_r \\ &= \phi_s A_{st} F_y \end{aligned}$$

**Note:** The concrete in compression is taken to have a rectangular stress block of intensity  $f'_c$  over a depth of  $a = 0.85c$ , where  $c$  is the depth of concrete in compression.

(b) for a circular hollow structural section:

$$\begin{aligned} C_r &= \phi_s F_y \beta \frac{Dt}{2} \\ e &= b_c \left[ \frac{1}{(2\pi - \beta)} + \frac{1}{\beta} \right] \\ C'_r &= \phi_c f'_c \left[ \frac{\beta D^2}{8} - \frac{b_c}{2} \left[ \frac{D}{2} - a \right] \right] \\ e' &= b_c \left[ \frac{1}{(2\pi - \beta)} + \frac{b_c^2}{1.5\beta D^2 - 6b_c(0.5D - a)} \right] \end{aligned}$$

where

$\beta$  = value in radians derived from the following recursive equation:

$$\beta = \frac{\phi_s A_s F_y + 0.25\phi_c D^2 f'_c \left[ \sin(\beta/2) - \sin^2(\beta/2) \tan(\beta/4) \right]}{0.125\phi_c D^2 f'_c + \phi_s D t F_y}$$

$$b_c = D \sin(\beta/2)$$

$$a = b_c/2 \tan(\beta/4)$$

Conservatively,  $M_{rc}$  may be taken as

$$M_{rc} = (Z - 2th_n^2)\phi_s F_y + \left[ 2/3(0.5D - t)^3 - (0.5D - t)h_n^2 \right] \phi_c f'_c$$

where

$$h_n = \frac{\phi_c A_c f'_c}{2D\phi_c f'_c + 4t(2\phi_c F_y - \phi_c f'_c)}$$

$Z$  = plastic modulus of the steel section alone

### 10.9.5.6 Axial compression and bending resistance

Members required to resist both bending moments and axial compression shall be proportioned analogously with Clause 10.9.4 so that

$$\frac{C_f}{C_{rc}} + \frac{B\omega_1 M_f}{M_{rc} \left[ 1 - \frac{C_f}{C_{ec}} \right]} \leq 1.0$$

$$\frac{M_f}{M_{rc}} \leq 1.0$$

$$B = \frac{C_{rc0} - C_{rcm}}{C_{rc0}}$$

where

$C_{rc0}$  = factored compressive resistance with  $\lambda = 0$

$C_{rcm}$  = factored compressive resistance that can coexist with  $M_{rc}$

$M_{rc}$  = the value specified in Clause 10.9.5.5

Conservatively,  $B$  may be taken as equal to 1.0.

## 10.10 Beams and girders

### 10.10.1 General

#### 10.10.1.1 Cross-sectional area

Beams and girders shall be proportioned on the basis of the geometric properties of the gross section, except that a deduction shall be made for the area of the bolt holes exceeding 15% of the gross flange area.

#### 10.10.1.2 Flange cover plate restrictions

Flanges of welded beams or girders shall consist of single plates or a series of plates, joined end-to-end by complete penetration groove welds. The use of welded partial-length cover plates shall require Approval.

#### 10.10.1.3 Lateral support

Lateral support of compression flanges shall be provided by adequate connection to the deck or by bracing capable of restraining lateral displacement and twisting of the beams and girders unless it can be demonstrated that such restraint is developed between the steel beam and the concrete slab. Wood decks shall not be considered to provide lateral support unless the deck and fastenings are designed for this purpose.

#### 10.10.1.4 Flange-to-web connections

Welds connecting flanges to webs shall be proportioned to resist interface shear due to bending combined with any loads that could be transmitted from the flange to the web other than by direct bearing.

### 10.10.2 Class 1 and 2 sections

#### 10.10.2.1 Width-to-thickness ratios

Class 1 and 2 sections subject to flexure and having an axis of symmetry in the plane of loading shall meet the requirements of Clause 10.9.2. For calculating the limiting width-to-thickness ratios of the web of monosymmetric sections,  $h$  in Table 10.3 shall be replaced by  $2d_c$ .